

**BID DOCUMENTS AND CONTRACTS
FOR
ST. CLAIR COUNTY HOUSING AUTHORITY**

Capital Fund Improvements
AMPs 4, 5 and 6
Belleville, Washington Park and New Athens, Illinois

Boiler, HVAC and Water Heater Replacement

COMMISSIONERS
Eugene Verdu, Chairman
Dan Barger
Billie Jean Miller
Vivian Cash
Sister Julia Huiskamp

EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR

Larry McLean

PROJECT MANAGER

David Wright

February 20, 2020

PACKAGE NUMBER _____

Contract Number IFB-20-B0001

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	SECTION
Invitation for Bids.....	1
Instructions to Bidders HUD 5369	2
General Conditions HUD 5370	3
Supplemental General Conditions.....	4
Additional Insured Endorsement Sample	5
Standard Form Agreement Example	6
Contract Modification Forms.....	7
Wage Decision	8
PLA Requirements.....	9
 <i>*Note: Bidder is required to return the documents below with the appropriate signature, date, and notarized where appropriate. Failure to do so as indicated on the document may be cause to <u>reject</u> the bid.</i>	
*Non-Collusive Affidavit.....	10
*Certification of Payments to Influence Federal Transactions HUD 50071.....	11
*Disclosure of Lobbying Activities HUD SF-LLL.....	12
*Bid Form	13
*Statement of Bidders HUD 5369A	14
*Affirmative Action & EEO Requirements.....	15
*Special Contract Requirements.....	16
*Section 3 Employee Worksheets	17
Specifications	18

SECTION 1

INVITATION FOR BIDS

INVITATION FOR BIDS

The St. Clair County Housing Authority is accepting sealed bids for work officially known as; **Boiler, HVAC and Water Heater Replacement at Belleville, Washington Park and New Athens, IL**; at the Central Office Building, 1790 South 74th Street, Belleville, IL 62223 until 10:00 AM prevailing time March 26th, 2020. Bids will be opened at 10:00 AM at the same location.

OWNER'S CONTACT FOR THIS PROJECT: David Wright, Project Manager at (618) 277-6890.

DESCRIPTION OF WORK: Remove and replace gas fired staged Boiler system, electric and gas residential furnaces with A-coils and condensing units (some elevated) and water heaters with all trims, wiring, piping and accessories.

JOB SITE VISITATION: A pre-bid meeting describing the job will be conducted on Thursday, March 5th, 2020, at 10:00 am by the owner's representative. All bidders desiring to review the work should meet at, 1790 S. 74th St., Belleville, Illinois.

THIS WILL BE THE ONLY JOB SITE VISITATION CONDUCTED.

BID BONDS: Each bid must be accompanied by a certified check, bank draft, U. S. Government Bonds at par value or a 5% bid bond secured by an approved surety company. The surety company must be authorized to do business in the State of Illinois and must be acceptable to the Government. If the bid guarantee is not submitted with the bid, the PHA shall reject the bid. No bid may be withdrawn within sixty days after the scheduled bid opening.

BID SUBMISSIONS: All bids must be submitted and signed on the Bid Forms finished in the Bid Packet. Failure to do so may result in the rejection of your bid.

AFFIRMATIVE ACTION AND EQUAL OPPURTUNITY: All bidders are advised that they must satisfy the requirement to utilize qualified minority businesses to perform subcontracted work or supply materials and/or equipment for this project.

OWNER'S RIGHTS: The SCCHA reserves the right to reject any and all bids. The SCCHA may waive minor defects or irregularities in the bidding, other than the bid submission deadline, the bid bond requirement and the bid form, and further reserves the right to negotiate with the low bidder such changes in the price and scope of work as may be necessary to achieve financial feasibility.

HUD APPROVAL: The work is to be funded by the U. S. Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD), and the contract administered by the SCCHA. HUD reserves the right to approve the contractor selected by the Authority.

BID DOCUMENTS: Persons interested in bidding may obtain a copy of the bid packet from the owner's contact listed above. The Housing Authority is requiring a \$25.00 non-refundable deposit for bid materials. Should a bidder find discrepancies or omissions in the drawing and specifications or should he/she be in doubt as to the meaning, he/she shall at once notify the owner. **Any changes of interpretations of the bid documents will be issued by way of a formal addendum to all plan holders.** All bidders must acknowledge receipt of addenda in the space provided on the Bid Form.

PERFORMANCE GUARANTY: The contractor shall be required to furnish a performance and payment bond for 100% of the contract price.

WAGE RATE DETERMINATION: All workers participating in the execution of this contract must be paid not less than Davis Bacon wage rates as listed in the attached Wage Decision.

PROJECT LABOR AGREEMENT: All contractors performing work shall sign and be party to the project labor agreement included in the specifications.

INSURANCE: The contractor must provide proof of Comprehensive General Public Liability and Automobile Liability Insurance each with a minimum of \$1,000,000.00 with SCCHA listed as an additional insured (**requiring a separate additional insured endorsement form attached to Certificate of Insurance**) and Illinois Worker's Compensation Insurance in accordance with Illinois State Law to the Owner prior to issuance of the "Notice to Proceed."

ST. CLAIR COUNTY HOUSING AUTHORITY


Larry McLean
EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR

DATE

2/19/2020

SECTION 2

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS HUD 5369

**U.S. Department of Housing and
Urban Development**
Office of Public and Indian Housing

**Instructions to Bidders for Contracts
Public and Indian Housing Programs**

Instructions to Bidders for Contracts

Public and Indian Housing Programs

Table of Contents

Clause	Page
1. Bid Preparation and Submission	1
2. Explanations and Interpretations to Prospective Bidders	1
3. Amendments to Invitations for Bids	1
4. Responsibility of Prospective Contractor	1
5. Late Submissions, Modifications, and Withdrawal of Bids	1
6. Bid Opening	2
7. Service of Protest	2
8. Contract Award	2
9. Bid Guarantee	3
10. Assurance of Completion	3
11. Preconstruction Conference	3
12. Indian Preference Requirements	3

1. Bid Preparation and Submission

- (a) Bidders are expected to examine the specifications, drawings, all instructions, and, if applicable, the construction site (see also the contract clause entitled *Site Investigation and Conditions Affecting the Work of the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction*). Failure to do so will be at the bidders' risk.
- (b) All bids must be submitted on the forms provided by the Public Housing Agency/Indian Housing Authority (PHA/IHA). Bidders shall furnish all the information required by the solicitation. Bids must be signed and the bidder's name typed or printed on the bid sheet and each continuation sheet which requires the entry of information by the bidder. Erasures or other changes must be initiated by the person signing the bid. Bids signed by an agent shall be accompanied by evidence of that agent's authority. (Bidders should retain a copy of their bid for their records.)
- (c) Bidders must submit as part of their bid a completed form HUD-5369-A, "Representations, Certifications, and Other Statements of Bidders."
- (d) All bid documents shall be sealed in an envelope which shall be clearly marked with the words "Bid Documents," the Invitation for Bids (IFB) number, any project or other identifying number, the bidder's name, and the date and time for receipt of bids.
- (e) If this solicitation requires bidding on all items, failure to do so will disqualify the bid. If bidding on all items is not required, bidders should insert the words "No Bid" in the space provided for any item on which no price is submitted.
- (f) Unless expressly authorized elsewhere in this solicitation, alternate bids will not be considered.
- (g) Unless expressly authorized elsewhere in this solicitation, bids submitted by telegraph or facsimile (fax) machines will not be considered.
- (h) If the proposed contract is for a Mutual Help project (as described in 24 CFR Part 905, Subpart E) that involves Mutual Help contributions of work, material, or equipment, supplemental information regarding the bid advertisement is provided as an attachment to this solicitation.

2. Explanations and Interpretations to Prospective Bidders

- (a) Any prospective bidder desiring an explanation or interpretation of the solicitation, specifications, drawings, etc., must request it at least 7 days before the scheduled time for bid opening. Requests may be oral or written. Oral requests must be confirmed in writing. The only oral clarifications that will be provided will be those clearly related to solicitation procedures, i.e., not substantive technical information. No other oral explanation or interpretation will be provided. Any information given a prospective bidder concerning this solicitation will be furnished promptly to all other prospective bidders as a written amendment to the solicitation, if that information is necessary in submitting bids, or if the lack of it would be prejudicial to other prospective bidders.
- (b) Any information obtained by, or provided to, a bidder other than by formal amendment to the solicitation shall not constitute a change to the solicitation.

3. Amendments to Invitations for Bids

- (a) If this solicitation is amended, then all terms and conditions which are not modified remain unchanged.
- (b) Bidders shall acknowledge receipt of any amendment to this solicitation (1) by signing and returning the amendment, (2) by identifying the amendment number and date on the bid form, or (3) by letter, telegram, or facsimile, if those methods are authorized in the solicitation. The PHA/IHA must receive acknowledgement by the time and at the place specified for receipt of bids. Bids which fail to acknowledge the bidder's receipt of any amendment will result in the rejection of the bid if the amendment(s) contained information which substantively changed the PHA's/IHA's requirements.
- (c) Amendments will be on file in the offices of the PHA/IHA and the Architect at least 7 days before bid opening.

4. Responsibility of Prospective Contractor

- (a) The PHA/IHA will award contracts only to responsible prospective contractors who have the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of the proposed contract. In determining the responsibility of a bidder, the PHA/IHA will consider such matters as the bidder's:
- (1) Integrity;
 - (2) Compliance with public policy;
 - (3) Record of past performance; and
 - (4) Financial and technical resources (including construction and technical equipment).
- (b) Before a bid is considered for award, the bidder may be requested by the PHA/IHA to submit a statement or other documentation regarding any of the items in paragraph (a) above. Failure by the bidder to provide such additional information shall render the bidder nonresponsible and ineligible for award.

5. Late Submissions, Modifications, and Withdrawal of Bids

(a) Any bid received at the place designated in the solicitation after the exact time specified for receipt will not be considered unless it is received before award is made and it:

(1) Was sent by registered or certified mail not later than the fifth calendar day before the date specified for receipt of offers (e.g., an offer submitted in response to a solicitation requiring receipt of offers by the 20th of the month must have been mailed by the 15th);

(2) Was sent by mail, or if authorized by the solicitation, was sent by telegram or via facsimile, and it is determined by the PHA/IHA that the late receipt was due solely to mishandling by the PHA/IHA after receipt at the PHA/IHA; or

(3) Was sent by U.S. Postal Service Express Mail Next Day Service - Post Office to Addressee, not later than 5:00 p.m. at the place of mailing two working days prior to the date specified for receipt of proposals. The term "working days" excludes weekends and observed holidays.

(b) Any modification or withdrawal of a bid is subject to the same conditions as in paragraph (a) of this provision.

(c) The only acceptable evidence to establish the date of mailing of a late bid, modification, or withdrawal sent either by registered or certified mail is the U.S. or Canadian Postal Service postmark both on the envelope or wrapper and on the original receipt from the U.S. or Canadian Postal Service. Both postmarks must show a legible date or the bid, modification, or withdrawal shall be processed as if mailed late. "Postmark" means a printed, stamped, or otherwise placed impression (exclusive of a postage meter machine impression) that is readily identifiable without further action as having been supplied and affixed by employees of the U.S. or Canadian Postal Service on the date of mailing. Therefore, bidders should request the postal clerk to place a hand cancellation bull's-eye postmark on both the receipt and the envelope or wrapper.

(d) The only acceptable evidence to establish the time of receipt at the PHA/IHA is the time/date stamp of PHA/IHA on the proposal wrapper or other documentary evidence of receipt maintained by the PHA/IHA.

(e) The only acceptable evidence to establish the date of mailing of a late bid, modification, or withdrawal sent by Express Mail Next Day Service-Post Office to Addressee is the date entered by the post office receiving clerk on the "Express Mail Next Day Service-Post Office to Addressee" label and the postmark on both the envelope or wrapper and on the original receipt from the U.S. Postal Service. "Postmark" has the same meaning as defined in paragraph (c) of this provision, excluding postmarks of the Canadian Postal Service. Therefore, bidders should request the postal clerk to place a legible hand cancellation bull's eye postmark on both the receipt and Failure by a bidder to acknowledge receipt of the envelope or wrapper.

(f) Notwithstanding paragraph (a) of this provision, a late modification of an otherwise successful bid that makes its terms more favorable to the PHA/IHA will be considered at any time it is received and may be accepted.

(g) Bids may be withdrawn by written notice, or if authorized by this solicitation, by telegram (including mailgram) or facsimile machine transmission received at any time before the exact time set for opening of bids; provided that written confirmation of telegraphic or facsimile withdrawals over the signature of the bidder is mailed and postmarked prior to the specified bid opening time. A bid may be withdrawn in person by a bidder or its authorized representative if, before the exact time set for opening of bids, the identity of the person requesting withdrawal is established and the person signs a receipt for the bid.

6. Bid Opening

All bids received by the date and time of receipt specified in the solicitation will be publicly opened and read. The time and place of opening will be as specified in the solicitation. Bidders and other interested persons may be present.

7. Service of Protest

(a) Definitions. As used in this provision:

"Interested party" means an actual or prospective bidder whose direct economic interest would be affected by the award of the contract.

"Protest" means a written objection by an interested party to this solicitation or to a proposed or actual award of a contract pursuant to this solicitation.

(b) Protests shall be served on the Contracting Officer by obtaining written and dated acknowledgement from —

[Contracting Officer designate the official or location where a protest may be served on the Contracting Officer]

(c) All protests shall be resolved in accordance with the PHA's/IHA's protest policy and procedures, copies of which are maintained at the PHA/IHA.

8. Contract Award

(a) The PHA/IHA will evaluate bids in response to this solicitation without discussions and will award a contract to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming to the solicitation, will be most advantageous to the PHA/IHA considering only price and any price-related factors specified in the solicitation.

(b) If the apparent low bid received in response to this solicitation exceeds the PHA's/IHA's available funding for the proposed contract work, the PHA/IHA may either accept separately priced items (see 8(e) below) or use the following procedure to determine contract award. The PHA/IHA shall apply in turn to each bid (proceeding in order from the apparent low bid to the high bid) each of the separately priced bid deductible items, if any, in their priority order set forth in this solicitation. If upon the application of the first deductible item to all initial bids, a new low bid is within the PHA's/IHA's available funding, then award shall be made to that bidder. If no bid is within the available funding amount, then the PHA/IHA shall apply the second deductible item. The PHA/IHA shall continue this process until an evaluated low bid, if any, is within the PHA's/IHA's available funding. If upon the application of all deductibles, no bid is within the PHA's/IHA's available funding, or if the solicitation does not request separately priced deductibles, the PHA/IHA shall follow its written policy and procedures in making any award under this solicitation.

(c) In the case of tie low bids, award shall be made in accordance with the PHA's/IHA's written policy and procedures.

(d) The PHA/IHA may reject any and all bids, accept other than the lowest bid (e.g., the apparent low bid is unreasonably low), and waive informalities or minor irregularities in bids received, in accordance with the PHA's/IHA's written policy and procedures.

(e) Unless precluded elsewhere in the solicitation, the PHA/IHA may accept any item or combination of items bid.

(f) The PHA/IHA may reject any bid as nonresponsive if it is materially unbalanced as to the prices for the various items of work to be performed. A bid is materially unbalanced when it is based on prices significantly less than cost for some work and prices which are significantly overstated for other work.

(g) A written award shall be furnished to the successful bidder within the period for acceptance specified in the bid and shall result in a binding contract without further action by either party.

9. Bid Guarantee (applicable to construction and equipment contracts exceeding \$25,000)

All bids must be accompanied by a negotiable bid guarantee which shall not be less than five percent (5%) of the amount of the bid. The bid guarantee may be a certified check, bank draft, U.S. Government Bonds at par value, or a bid bond secured by a surety company acceptable to the U.S. Government and authorized to do business in the state where the work is to be performed. In the case where the work under the contract will be performed on an Indian reservation area, the bid guarantee may also be an irrevocable Letter of Credit (see provision 10, Assurance of Completion, below). Certified checks and bank drafts must be made payable to the order of the PHA/IHA. The bid guarantee shall insure the execution of the contract and the furnishing of a method of assurance of completion by the successful bidder as required by the solicitation. Failure to submit a bid guarantee with the bid shall result in the rejection of the bid. Bid guarantees submitted by unsuccessful bidders will be returned as soon as practicable after bid opening.

10. Assurance of Completion

(a) Unless otherwise provided in State law, the successful bidder shall furnish an assurance of completion prior to the execution of any contract under this solicitation. This assurance may be [Contracting Officer check applicable items] —

[] (1) a performance and payment bond in a penal sum of 100 percent of the contract price; or, as may be required or permitted by State law;

[] (2) separate performance and payment bonds, each for 50 percent or more of the contract price;

[] (3) a 20 percent cash escrow;

[] (4) a 25 percent irrevocable letter of credit; or,

[] (5) an irrevocable letter of credit for 10 percent of the total contract price with a monitoring and disbursements agreement with the IHA (applicable only to contracts awarded by an IHA under the Indian Housing Program).

(b) Bonds must be obtained from guarantee or surety companies acceptable to the U.S. Government and authorized to do business in the state where the work is to be performed. Individual sureties will not be considered. U.S. Treasury Circular Number 570, published annually in the Federal Register, lists companies approved to act as sureties on bonds securing Government contracts, the maximum underwriting limits on each contract bonded, and the States in which the company is licensed to do business. Use of companies listed in this circular is mandatory. Copies of the circular may be downloaded on the U.S. Department of Treasury website <http://www.fms.treas.gov/c570/index.html>, or ordered for a minimum fee by contacting the Government Printing Office at (202) 512-2168.

(c) Each bond shall clearly state the rate of premium and the total amount of premium charged. The current power of attorney for the person who signs for the surety company must be attached to the bond. The effective date of the power of attorney shall not precede the date of the bond. The effective date of the bond shall be on or after the execution date of the contract.

(d) Failure by the successful bidder to obtain the required assurance of completion within the time specified, or within such extended period as the PHA/IHA may grant based upon reasons determined adequate by the PHA/IHA, shall render the bidder ineligible for award. The PHA/IHA may then either award the contract to the next lowest responsible bidder or solicit new bids. The PHA/IHA may retain the ineligible bidder's bid guarantee.

11. Preconstruction Conference (applicable to construction contracts)

After award of a contract under this solicitation and prior to the start of work, the successful bidder will be required to attend a preconstruction conference with representatives of the PHA/IHA and its architect/engineer, and other interested parties convened by the PHA/IHA. The conference will serve to acquaint the participants with the general plan of the construction operation and all other requirements of the contract (e.g., Equal Employment Opportunity, Labor Standards). The PHA/IHA will provide the successful bidder with the date, time, and place of the conference.

12. Indian Preference Requirements (applicable only if this solicitation is for a contract to be performed on a project for an Indian Housing Authority)

(a) HUD has determined that the contract awarded under this solicitation is subject to the requirements of section 7(b) of the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act (25 U.S.C. 450e(b)). Section 7(b) requires that any contract or subcontract entered into for the benefit of Indians shall require that, to the greatest extent feasible

(1) Preferences and opportunities for training and employment (other than core crew positions; see paragraph (h) below) in connection with the administration of such contracts or subcontracts be given to qualified "Indians." The Act defines "Indians" to mean persons who are members of an Indian tribe and defines "Indian tribe" to mean any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community, including any Alaska Native village or regional or village corporation as defined in or established pursuant to the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, which is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians; and,

(2) Preference in the award of contracts or subcontracts in connection with the administration of contracts be given to Indian organizations and to Indian-owned economic enterprises, as defined in section 3 of the Indian Financing Act of 1974 (25 U.S.C. 1452). That Act defines "economic enterprise" to mean any Indian-owned commercial, industrial, or business activity established or organized for the purpose of profit, except that the Indian ownership must constitute not less than 51 percent of the enterprise; "Indian organization" to mean the governing body of any Indian tribe or entity established or recognized by such governing body; "Indian" to mean any person who is a member of any tribe, band, group, pueblo, or community which is recognized by the Federal Government as eligible for services from the Bureau of Indian Affairs and any "Native" as defined in the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act; and Indian "tribe" to mean any Indian tribe, band, group, pueblo, or community including Native villages and Native groups (including

corporations organized by Kenai, Juneau, Sitka, and Kodiak) as defined in the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, which is recognized by the Federal Government as eligible for services from the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

(b) (1) The successful Contractor under this solicitation shall comply with the requirements of this provision in awarding all subcontracts under the contract and in providing training and employment opportunities.

(2) A finding by the IHA that the contractor, either (i) awarded a subcontract without using the procedure required by the IHA, (ii) falsely represented that subcontracts would be awarded to Indian enterprises or organizations; or, (iii) failed to comply with the contractor's employment and training preference bid statement shall be grounds for termination of the contract or for the assessment of penalties or other remedies.

(c) If specified elsewhere in this solicitation, the IHA may restrict the solicitation to qualified Indian-owned enterprises and Indian organizations. If two or more (or a greater number as specified elsewhere in the solicitation) qualified Indian-owned enterprises or organizations submit responsive bids, award shall be made to the qualified enterprise or organization with the lowest responsive bid. If fewer than the minimum required number of qualified Indian-owned enterprises or organizations submit responsive bids, the IHA shall reject all bids and readvertise the solicitation in accordance with paragraph (d) below.

(d) If the IHA prefers not to restrict the solicitation as described in paragraph (c) above, or if after having restricted a solicitation an insufficient number of qualified Indian enterprises or organizations submit bids, the IHA may advertise for bids from non-Indian as well as Indian-owned enterprises and Indian organizations. Award shall be made to the qualified Indian enterprise or organization with the lowest responsive bid if that bid is -

(1) Within the maximum HUD-approved budget amount established for the specific project or activity for which bids are being solicited; and

(2) No more than the percentage specified in 24 CFR 905.175(c) higher than the total bid price of the lowest responsive bid from any qualified bidder. If no responsive bid by a qualified Indian-owned economic enterprise or organization is within the stated range of the total bid price of the lowest responsive bid from any qualified enterprise, award shall be made to the bidder with the lowest bid.

(e) Bidders seeking to qualify for preference in contracting or subcontracting shall submit proof of Indian ownership with their bids. Proof of Indian ownership shall include but not be limited to:

(1) Certification by a tribe or other evidence that the bidder is an Indian. The IHA shall accept the certification of a tribe that an individual is a member.

(2) Evidence such as stock ownership, structure, management, control, financing and salary or profit sharing arrangements of the enterprise.

(f) (1) All bidders must submit with their bids a statement describing how they will provide Indian preference in the award of subcontracts. The specific requirements of that statement and the factors to be used by the IHA in determining the statement's adequacy are included as an attachment to this solicitation. Any bid that fails to include the required statement shall be rejected as nonresponsive. The IHA may require that comparable statements be provided by subcontractors to the successful Contractor, and may require the Contractor to reject any bid or proposal by a subcontractor that fails to include the statement.

(2) Bidders and prospective subcontractors shall submit a certification (supported by credible evidence) to the IHA in any instance where the bidder or subcontractor believes it is infeasible to provide Indian preference in subcontracting. The acceptance or rejection by the IHA of the certification shall be final. Rejection shall disqualify the bid from further consideration.

(g) All bidders must submit with their bids a statement detailing their employment and training opportunities and their plans to provide preference to Indians in implementing the contract; and the number or percentage of Indians anticipated to be employed and trained. Comparable statements from all proposed subcontractors must be submitted. The criteria to be used by the IHA in determining the statement(s)'s adequacy are included as an attachment to this solicitation. Any bid that fails to include the required statement(s), or that includes a statement that does not meet minimum standards required by the IHA shall be rejected as nonresponsive.

(h) Core crew employees. A core crew employee is an individual who is a bona fide employee of the contractor at the time the bid is submitted; or an individual who was not employed by the bidder at the time the bid was submitted, but who is regularly employed by the bidder in a supervisory or other key skilled position when work is available. Bidders shall submit with their bids a list of all core crew employees.

(i) Preference in contracting, subcontracting, employment, and training shall apply not only on-site, on the reservation, or within the IHA's jurisdiction, but also to contracts with firms that operate outside these areas (e.g., employment in modular or manufactured housing construction facilities).

(j) Bidders should contact the IHA to determine if any additional local preference requirements are applicable to this solicitation.

(k) The IHA [] does [] does not [Contracting Officer check applicable box] maintain lists of Indian-owned economic enterprises and Indian organizations by specialty (e.g., plumbing, electrical, foundations), which are available to bidders to assist them in meeting their responsibility to provide preference in connection with the administration of contracts and subcontracts.

SECTION 3

GENERAL CONDITIONS HUD 5370

General Conditions for Construction Contracts - Public Housing Programs

U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development
Office of Public and Indian Housing
OMB Approval No. 2577-0157 (exp. 3/31/2020)

Applicability. This form is applicable to any construction/development contract greater than \$150,000.

This form includes those clauses required by OMB's common rule on grantee procurement, implemented at HUD in 2 CFR 200, and those requirements set forth in Section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968 and its amendment by the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992, implemented by HUD at 24 CFR Part 135. The form is required for construction contracts awarded by Public Housing Agencies (PHAs).

The form is used by Housing Authorities in solicitations to provide necessary contract clauses. If the form were not used, HAs would be unable to enforce their contracts.

Public reporting burden for this collection of information is estimated to average 1.0 hours per response, including the time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed, and completing and reviewing the collection of information. Responses to the collection of information are required to obtain a benefit or to retain a benefit.

The information requested does not lend itself to confidentiality.

HUD may not conduct or sponsor, and a person is not required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a currently valid OMB number.

Clause	Page	Clause	Page
1. Definitions	2	Administrative Requirements	
2. Contractor's Responsibility for Work	2	25. Contract Period	9
3. Architect's Duties, Responsibilities and Authority	2	26. Order of Precedence	9
4. Other Contracts	3	27. Payments	9
Construction Requirements	28	Contract Modifications	10
5. Preconstruction Conference and Notice to Proceed	3	29. Changes	10
6. Construction Progress Schedule	3	30. Suspension of Work	11
7. Site Investigation and Conditions Affecting the Work	3	31. Disputes	11
8. Differing Site Conditions	4	32. Default	11
9. Specifications and Drawings for Construction	4	33. Liquidated	12
10. As-Built Drawings	5	34. Termination of Convenience	12
11. Material and Workmanship	5	35. Assignment of Contract	12
12. Permits and Codes	5	36. Insurance	12
13. Health, Safety, and Accident Prevention	6	37. Subcontracts	13
14. Temporary Buildings and Transportation Materials	6	38. Subcontracting with Small and Minority Firms, Women's Business Enterprise, and Labor Surplus Area Firms	13
15. Availability and Use of Utility Services	6	39. Equal Employment Opportunity	13
16. Protection of Existing Vegetation, Structures, Equipment, Utilities, and Improvements	6	40. Employment, Training, and Contracting Opportunities for Low-Income Persons, Section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968	14
17. Temporary Buildings and Transportation Materials	7	41. Interest of Members of Congress	15
18. Clean Air and Water	7	42. Interest of Members, Officers, or Employees and Former Members, Officers, or Employees	15
19. Energy Efficiency	7	43. Limitations on Payments Made to Influence	15
20. Inspection and Acceptance of Construction	7	44. Royalties and Patents	15
21. Use and Possession Prior to	8	45. Examination and Retention of Contractor's Records	15
22. Warranty of Title	8	46. Labor Standards-Davis-Bacon and Related Acts	15
23. Warranty of	8	47. Non-Federal Prevailing Wage Rates	19
24. Prohibition Against	9	48. Procurement of Recovered	19

1. Definitions

- (a) "Architect" means the person or other entity engaged by the PHA to perform architectural, engineering, design, and other services related to the work as provided for in the contract. When a PHA uses an engineer to act in this capacity, the terms "architect" and "engineer" shall be synonymous. The Architect shall serve as a technical representative of the Contracting Officer. The Architect's authority is as set forth elsewhere in this contract.
- (b) "Contract" means the contract entered into between the PHA and the Contractor. It includes the forms of Bid, the Bid Bond, the Performance and Payment Bond or Bonds or other assurance of completion, the Certifications, Representations, and Other Statements of Bidders (form HUD-5370), these General Conditions of the Contract for Construction (form HUD-5370), the applicable wage rate determinations from the U.S. Department of Labor, any special conditions included elsewhere in the contract, the specifications, and drawings. It includes all formal changes to any of those documents by addendum, change order, or other modification.
- (c) "Contracting Officer" means the person delegated the authority by the PHA to enter into, administer, and/or terminate this contract and designated as such in writing to the Contractor. The term includes any successor Contracting Officer and any duly authorized representative of the Contracting Officer also designated in writing. The Contracting Officer shall be deemed the authorized agent of the PHA in all dealings with the Contractor.
- (d) "Contractor" means the person or other entity entering into the contract with the PHA to perform all of the work required under the contract.
- (e) "Drawings" means the drawings enumerated in the schedule of drawings contained in the Specifications and as described in the contract clause entitled Specifications and Drawings for Construction herein.
- (f) "HUD" means the United States of America acting through the Department of Housing and Urban Development including the Secretary, or any other person designated to act on its behalf. HUD has agreed, subject to the provisions of an Annual Contributions Contract (ACC), to provide financial assistance to the PHA, which includes assistance in financing the work to be performed under this contract. As defined elsewhere in these General Conditions or the contract documents, the determination of HUD may be required to authorize changes in the work or for release of funds to the PHA for payment to the Contractor. Notwithstanding HUD's role, nothing in this contract shall be construed to create any contractual relationship between the Contractor and HUD.
- (g) "Project" means the entire project, whether construction or rehabilitation, the work for which is provided for in whole or in part under this contract.
- (h) "PHA" means the Public Housing Agency organized under applicable state laws which is a party to this contract.
- (i) "Specifications" means the written description of the technical requirements for construction and includes the criteria and tests for determining whether the requirements are met.
- (l) "Work" means materials, workmanship, and manufacture and fabrication of components.

2. Contractor's Responsibility for Work

- (a) The Contractor shall furnish all necessary labor, materials, tools, equipment, and transportation necessary for performance of the work. The Contractor shall also furnish all necessary water, heat, light, and power not made available to the Contractor by the PHA pursuant to the clause entitled Availability and Use of Utility Services herein.
- (b) The Contractor shall perform on the site, and with its own organization, work equivalent to at least [] (12 percent unless otherwise indicated) of the total amount of work to be performed under the order. This percentage may be reduced by a supplemental agreement to this order if, during performing the work, the Contractor requests a reduction and the Contracting Officer determines that the reduction would be to the advantage of the PHA.
- (c) At all times during performance of this contract and until the work is completed and accepted, the Contractor shall directly superintend the work or assign and have on the work site a competent superintendent who is satisfactory to the Contracting Officer and has authority to act for the Contractor.
- (d) The Contractor shall be responsible for all damages to persons or property that occur as a result of the Contractor's fault or negligence, and shall take proper safety and health precautions to protect the work, the workers, the public, and the property of others. The Contractor shall hold and save the PHA, its officers and agents, free and harmless from liability of any nature occasioned by the Contractor's performance. The Contractor shall also be responsible for all materials delivered and work performed until completion and acceptance of the entire work, except for any completed unit of work which may have been accepted under the contract.
- (e) The Contractor shall lay out the work from base lines and bench marks indicated on the drawings and be responsible for all lines, levels, and measurements of all work executed under the contract. The Contractor shall verify the figures before laying out the work and will be held responsible for any error resulting from its failure to do so.
- (f) The Contractor shall confine all operations (including storage of materials) on PHA premises to areas authorized or approved by the Contracting Officer.
- (g) The Contractor shall at all times keep the work area, including storage areas, free from accumulations of waste materials. After completing the work and before final inspection, the Contractor shall (1) remove from the premises all scaffolding, equipment, tools, and materials (including rejected materials) that are not the property of the PHA and all rubbish caused by its work; (2) leave the work area in a clean, neat, and orderly condition satisfactory to the Contracting Officer; (3) perform all specified tests; and, (4) deliver the installation in complete and operating condition.
- (h) The Contractor's responsibility will terminate when all work has been completed, the final inspection made, and the work accepted by the Contracting Officer. The Contractor will then be released from further obligation except as required by the warranties specified elsewhere in the contract.

3. Architect's Duties, Responsibilities, and Authority

- (a) The Architect for this contract, and any successor, shall be designated in writing by the Contracting Officer.

- (b) The Architect shall serve as the Contracting Officer's technical representative with respect to architectural, engineering, and design matters related to the work performed under the contract. The Architect may provide direction on contract performance. Such direction shall be within the scope of the contract and may not be of a nature which: (1) institutes additional work outside the scope of the contract; (2) constitutes a change as defined in the Changes clause herein; (3) causes an increase or decrease in the cost of the contract; (4) alters the Construction Progress Schedule; or (5) changes any of the other express terms or conditions of the contract.
- (c) The Architect's duties and responsibilities may include but shall not be limited to:
- (1) Making periodic visits to the work site, and on the basis of his/her on-site inspections, issuing written reports to the PHA which shall include all observed deficiencies. The Architect shall file a copy of the report with the Contractor's designated representative at the site;
 - (2) Making modifications in drawings and technical specifications and assisting the Contracting Officer in the preparation of change orders and other contract modifications for issuance by the Contracting Officer;
 - (3) Reviewing and making recommendations with respect to - (i) the Contractor's construction progress schedules; (ii) the Contractor's shop and detailed drawings; (iii) the machinery, mechanical and other equipment and materials or other articles proposed for use by the Contractor; and, (iv) the Contractor's price breakdown and progress payment estimates; and,
 - (4) Assisting in inspections, signing Certificates of Completion, and making recommendations with respect to acceptance of work completed under the contract.

4. Other Contracts

The PHA may undertake or award other contracts for additional work at or near the site of the work under this contract. The Contractor shall fully cooperate with the other contractors and with PHA employees and shall carefully adapt scheduling and performing the work under this contract to accommodate the additional work, heeding any direction that may be provided by the Contracting Officer. The Contractor shall not commit or permit any act that will interfere with the performance of work by any other contractor or by PHA employees

Construction Requirements

5. Pre-construction Conference and Notice to Proceed

- (a) Within ten calendar days of contract execution, and prior to the commencement of work, the Contractor shall attend a preconstruction conference with representatives of the PHA, its Architect, and other interested parties convened by the PHA. The conference will serve to acquaint the participants with the general plan of the construction operation and all other requirements of the contract. The PHA will provide the Contractor with the date, time, and place of the conference.
- (b) The contractor shall begin work upon receipt of a written Notice to Proceed from the Contracting Officer or designee. The Contractor shall not begin work prior to receiving such notice.

6. Construction Progress Schedule

- (a) The Contractor shall, within five days after the work commences on the contract or another period of time determined by the Contracting Officer, prepare and submit to the Contracting Officer for approval three copies of a practicable schedule showing the order in which the Contractor proposes to perform the work, and the dates on which the Contractor contemplates starting and completing the several salient features of the work (including acquiring labor, materials, and equipment). The schedule shall be in the form of a progress chart of suitable scale to indicate appropriately the percentage of work scheduled for completion by any given date during the period. If the Contractor fails to submit a schedule within the time prescribed, the Contracting Officer may withhold approval of progress payments or take other remedies under the contract until the Contractor submits the required schedule.
- (b) The Contractor shall enter the actual progress on the chart as required by the Contracting Officer, and immediately deliver three copies of the annotated schedule to the Contracting Officer. If the Contracting Officer determines, upon the basis of inspection conducted pursuant to the clause entitled Inspection and Acceptance of Construction, herein that the Contractor is not meeting the approved schedule, the Contractor shall take steps necessary to improve its progress, including those that may be required by the Contracting Officer, without additional cost to the PHA. In this circumstance, the Contracting Officer may require the Contractor to increase the number of shifts, overtime operations, days of work, and/or the amount of construction plant, and to submit for approval any supplementary schedule or schedules in chart form as the Contracting Officer deems necessary to demonstrate how the approved rate of progress will be regained.
- (c) Failure of the Contractor to comply with the requirements of the Contracting Officer under this clause shall be grounds for a determination by the Contracting Officer that the Contractor is not prosecuting the work with sufficient diligence to ensure completion within the time specified in the Contract. Upon making this determination, the Contracting Officer may terminate the Contractor's right to proceed with the work, or any separable part of it, in accordance with the Default clause of this contract.

7. Site Investigation and Conditions Affecting the Work

- (a) The Contractor acknowledges that it has taken steps reasonably necessary to ascertain the nature and location of the work, and that it has investigated and satisfied itself as to the general and local conditions which can affect the work or its cost, including but not limited to, (1) conditions bearing upon transportation, disposal, handling, and storage of materials; (2) the availability of labor, water, electric power, and roads; (3) uncertainties of weather, river stages, tides, or similar physical conditions at the site; (4) the conformation and conditions of the ground; and (5) the character of equipment and facilities needed preliminary to and during work performance. The Contractor also acknowledges that it has satisfied itself as to the character, quality, and quantity of surface and subsurface materials or obstacles to be encountered insofar as this information is

- reasonably ascertainable from an inspection of the site, including all exploratory work done by the PHA, as well as from the drawings and specifications made a part of this contract. Any failure of the Contractor to take the actions described and acknowledged in this paragraph will not relieve the Contractor from responsibility for estimating properly the difficulty and cost of successfully performing the work, or for proceeding to successfully perform the work without additional expense to the PHA.
- (b) The PHA assumes no responsibility for any conclusions or interpretations made by the Contractor based on the information made available by the PHA. Nor does the PHA assume responsibility for any understanding reached or representation made concerning conditions which can affect the work by any of its officers or agents before the execution of this contract, unless that understanding or representation is expressly stated in this contract.
- 8. Differing Site Conditions**
- (a) The Contractor shall promptly, and before the conditions are disturbed, give a written notice to the Contracting Officer of (1) subsurface or latent physical conditions at the site which differ materially from those indicated in this contract, or (2) unknown physical conditions at the site(s), of an unusual nature, which differ materially from those ordinarily encountered and generally recognized as inhering in work of the character provided for in the contract.
- (b) The Contracting Officer shall investigate the site conditions promptly after receiving the notice. Work shall not proceed at the affected site, except at the Contractor's risk, until the Contracting Officer has provided written instructions to the Contractor. If the conditions do materially so differ and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or the time required for, performing any part of the work under this contract, whether or not changed as a result of the conditions, the Contractor shall file a claim in writing to the PHA within ten days after receipt of such instructions and, in any event, before proceeding with the work. An equitable adjustment in the contract price, the delivery schedule, or both shall be made under this clause and the contract modified in writing accordingly.
- (c) No request by the Contractor for an equitable adjustment to the contract under this clause shall be allowed, unless the Contractor has given the written notice required; provided, that the time prescribed in (a) above for giving written notice may be extended by the Contracting Officer.
- (d) No request by the Contractor for an equitable adjustment to the contract for differing site conditions shall be allowed if made after final payment under this contract.
- 9. Specifications and Drawings for Construction**
- (a) The Contractor shall keep on the work site a copy of the drawings and specifications and shall at all times give the Contracting Officer access thereto. Anything mentioned in the specifications and not shown on the drawings, or shown on the drawings and not mentioned in the specifications, shall be of like effect as if shown or mentioned in both. In case of difference between drawings and specifications, the specifications shall govern. In case of discrepancy in the figures, in the drawings, or in the specifications, the matter shall be promptly submitted to the Contracting Officer, who shall promptly make a determination in writing. Any adjustment by the Contractor without such a determination shall be at its own risk and expense. The Contracting Officer shall furnish from time to time such detailed drawings and other information as considered necessary, unless otherwise provided.
- (b) Wherever in the specifications or upon the drawings the words "directed", "required", "ordered", "designated", "prescribed", or words of like import are used, it shall be understood that the "direction", "requirement", "order", "designation", or "prescription", of the Contracting Officer is intended and similarly the words "approved", "acceptable", "satisfactory", or words of like import shall mean "approved by", or "acceptable to", or "satisfactory to" the Contracting Officer, unless otherwise expressly stated.
- (c) Where "as shown" "as indicated", "as detailed", or of similar import are used, it shall be understood that the reference is made to the drawings accompanying this contract unless stated otherwise. The word "provided" as used herein shall be understood to mean "provide complete in place" that is "furnished and installed".
- (d) "Shop drawings" means drawings, submitted to the PHA by the Contractor, subcontractor, or any lower tier subcontractor, showing in detail (1) the proposed fabrication and assembly of structural elements and (2) the installation (i.e., form, fit, and attachment details) of materials of equipment. It includes drawings, diagrams, layouts, schematics, descriptive literature, illustrations, schedules, performance and test data, and similar materials furnished by the Contractor to explain in detail specific portions of the work required by the contract. The PHA may duplicate, use, and disclose in any manner and for any purpose shop drawings delivered under this contract.
- (e) If this contract requires shop drawings, the Contractor shall coordinate all such drawings, and review them for accuracy, completeness, and compliance with other contract requirements and shall indicate its approval thereon as evidence of such coordination and review. Shop drawings submitted to the Contracting Officer without evidence of the Contractor's approval may be returned for resubmission. The Contracting Officer will indicate an approval or disapproval of the shop drawings and if not approved as submitted shall indicate the PHA's reasons therefore. Any work done before such approval shall be at the Contractor's risk. Approval by the Contracting Officer shall not relieve the Contractor from responsibility for any errors or omissions in such drawings, nor from responsibility for complying with the requirements of this contract, except with respect to variations described and approved in accordance with (f) below.
- (f) If shop drawings show variations from the contract requirements, the Contractor shall describe such variations in writing, separate from the drawings, at the time of submission. If the Architect approves any such variation and the Contracting Officer concurs, the Contracting Officer shall issue an appropriate modification to the contract, except that, if the variation is minor or does not involve a change in price or in time of performance, a modification need not be issued.
- (g) It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to make timely requests of the PHA for such large scale and full size drawings, color schemes, and other additional information, not already in his possession, which shall be

- required in the planning and production of the work. Such requests may be submitted as the need arises, but each such request shall be filed in ample time to permit appropriate action to be taken by all parties involved so as to avoid delay.
- (h) The Contractor shall submit to the Contracting Officer for approval four copies (unless otherwise indicated) of all shop drawings as called for under the various headings of these specifications. Three sets (unless otherwise indicated) of all shop drawings, will be retained by the PHA and one set will be returned to the Contractor. As required by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor, upon completing the work under this contract, shall furnish a complete set of all shop drawings as finally approved. These drawings shall show all changes and revisions made up to the time the work is completed and accepted.
- (i) This clause shall be included in all subcontracts at any tier. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure that all shop drawings prepared by subcontractors are submitted to the Contracting Officer.
- 10. As-Built Drawings**
- (a) "As-built drawings," as used in this clause, means drawings submitted by the Contractor or subcontractor at any tier to show the construction of a particular structure or work as actually completed under the contract. "As-built drawings" shall be synonymous with "Record drawings."
- (b) As required by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall provide the Contracting Officer accurate information to be used in the preparation of permanent as-built drawings. For this purpose, the Contractor shall record on one set of contract drawings all changes from the installations originally indicated, and record final locations of underground lines by depth from finish grade and by accurate horizontal offset distances to permanent surface improvements such as buildings, curbs, or edges of walks.
- (c) This clause shall be included in all subcontracts at any tier. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure that all as-built drawings prepared by subcontractors are submitted to the Contracting Officer.
- 11. Material and Workmanship**
- (a) All equipment, material, and articles furnished under this contract shall be new and of the most suitable grade for the purpose intended, unless otherwise specifically provided in this contract. References in the contract to equipment, material, articles, or patented processes by trade name, make, or catalog number, shall be regarded as establishing a standard of quality and shall not be construed as limiting competition. The Contractor may, at its option, use any equipment, material, article, or process that, in the judgment of, and as approved by the Contracting Officer, is equal to that named in the specifications, unless otherwise specifically provided in this contract.
- (b) Approval of equipment and materials.
- (1) The Contractor shall obtain the Contracting Officer's approval of the machinery and mechanical and other equipment to be incorporated into the work. When requesting approval, the Contractor shall furnish to the Contracting Officer the name of the manufacturer, the model number, and other information concerning the performance, capacity, nature, and rating of the machinery and mechanical and other equipment. When required by this contract or by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall also obtain the Contracting Officer's approval of the material or articles which the Contractor contemplates incorporating into the work. When requesting approval, the Contractor shall provide full information concerning the material or articles. Machinery, equipment, material, and articles that do not have the required approval shall be installed or used at the risk of subsequent rejection.
- (2) When required by the specifications or the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall submit appropriately marked samples (and certificates related to them) for approval at the Contractor's expense, with all shipping charges prepaid. The Contractor shall label, or otherwise properly mark on the container, the material or product represented, its place of origin, the name of the producer, the Contractor's name, and the identification of the construction project for which the material or product is intended to be used.
- (3) Certificates shall be submitted in triplicate, describing each sample submitted for approval and certifying that the material, equipment or accessory complies with contract requirements. The certificates shall include the name and brand of the product, name of manufacturer, and the location where produced.
- (4) Approval of a sample shall not constitute a waiver of the PHA right to demand full compliance with contract requirements. Materials, equipment and accessories may be rejected for cause even though samples have been approved.
- (5) Wherever materials are required to comply with recognized standards or specifications, such specifications shall be accepted as establishing the technical qualities and testing methods, but shall not govern the number of tests required to be made nor modify other contract requirements. The Contracting Officer may require laboratory test reports on items submitted for approval or may approve materials on the basis of data submitted in certificates with samples. Check tests will be made on materials delivered for use only as frequently as the Contracting Officer determines necessary to insure compliance of materials with the specifications. The Contractor will assume all costs of retesting materials which fail to meet contract requirements and/or testing materials offered in substitution for those found deficient.
- (6) After approval, samples will be kept in the Project office until completion of work. They may be built into the work after a substantial quantity of the materials they represent has been built in and accepted.
- (c) Requirements concerning lead-based paint. The Contractor shall comply with the requirements concerning lead-based paint contained in the Lead-Based Paint Poisoning Prevention Act (42 U.S.C. 4821-4846) as implemented by 24 CFR Part 35.
- 12. Permits and Codes**
- (a) The Contractor shall give all notices and comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations. Notwithstanding the requirement of the Contractor to comply with the drawings and specifications in the contract, all work installed shall comply with all applicable codes and regulations as amended by any

- waivers. Before installing the work, the Contractor shall examine the drawings and the specifications for compliance with applicable codes and regulations bearing on the work and shall immediately report any discrepancy it may discover to the Contracting Officer. Where the requirements of the drawings and specifications fail to comply with the applicable code or regulation, the Contracting Officer shall modify the contract by change order pursuant to the clause entitled Changes herein to conform to the code or regulation.
- (b) The Contractor shall secure and pay for all permits, fees, and licenses necessary for the proper execution and completion of the work. Where the PHA can arrange for the issuance of all or part of these permits, fees and licenses, without cost to the Contractor, the contract amount shall be reduced accordingly.
- 13. Health, Safety, and Accident Prevention**
- (a) In performing this contract, the Contractor shall:
- (1) Ensure that no laborer or mechanic shall be required to work in surroundings or under working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to his/her health and/or safety as determined under construction safety and health standards promulgated by the Secretary of Labor by regulation;
 - (2) Protect the lives, health, and safety of other persons;
 - (3) Prevent damage to property, materials, supplies, and equipment; and,
 - (4) Avoid work interruptions.
- (b) For these purposes, the Contractor shall:
- (1) Comply with regulations and standards issued by the Secretary of Labor at 29 CFR Part 1926. Failure to comply may result in imposition of sanctions pursuant to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (Public Law 91-54, 83 Stat. 96), 40 U.S.C. 3701 et seq.; and
 - (2) Include the terms of this clause in every subcontract so that such terms will be binding on each subcontractor.
- (c) The Contractor shall maintain an accurate record of exposure data on all accidents incident to work performed under this contract resulting in death, traumatic injury, occupational disease, or damage to property, materials, supplies, or equipment, and shall report this data in the manner prescribed by 29 CFR Part 1904.
- (d) The Contracting Officer shall notify the Contractor of any noncompliance with these requirements and of the corrective action required. This notice, when delivered to the Contractor or the Contractor's representative at the site of the work, shall be deemed sufficient notice of the noncompliance and corrective action required. After receiving the notice, the Contractor shall immediately take corrective action. If the Contractor fails or refuses to take corrective action promptly, the Contracting Officer may issue an order stopping all or part of the work until satisfactory corrective action has been taken. The Contractor shall not base any claim or request for equitable adjustment for additional time or money on any stop order issued under these circumstances.
- (e) The Contractor shall be responsible for its subcontractors' compliance with the provisions of this clause. The Contractor shall take such action with respect to any subcontract as the PHA, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, or the Secretary of Labor shall direct as a means of enforcing such provisions.

14. Temporary Heating

The Contractor shall provide and pay for temporary heating, covering, and enclosures necessary to properly protect all work and materials against damage by dampness and cold, to dry out the work, and to facilitate the completion of the work. Any permanent heating equipment used shall be turned over to the PHA in the condition and at the time required by the specifications.

15. Availability and Use of Utility Services

- (a) The PHA shall make all reasonably required amounts of utilities available to the Contractor from existing outlets and supplies, as specified in the contract. Unless otherwise provided in the contract, the amount of each utility service consumed shall be charged to or paid for by the Contractor at prevailing rates charged to the PHA or, where the utility is produced by the PHA, at reasonable rates determined by the Contracting Officer. The Contractor shall carefully conserve any utilities furnished without charge.
- (b) The Contractor, at its expense and in a manner satisfactory to the Contracting Officer, shall install and maintain all necessary temporary connections and distribution lines, and all meters required to measure the amount of each utility used for the purpose of determining charges. Before final acceptance of the work by the PHA, the Contractor shall remove all the temporary connections, distribution lines, meters, and associated paraphernalia.

16. Protection of Existing Vegetation, Structures, Equipment, Utilities, and Improvements

- (a) The Contractor shall preserve and protect all structures, equipment, and vegetation (such as trees, shrubs, and grass) on or adjacent to the work site, which are not to be removed under this contract, and which do not unreasonably interfere with the work required under this contract.
- (b) The Contractor shall only remove trees when specifically authorized to do so, and shall avoid damaging vegetation that will remain in place. If any limbs or branches of trees are broken during performance of this contract, or by the careless operation of equipment, or by workmen, the Contractor shall trim those limbs or branches with a clean cut and paint the cut with a tree-pruning compound as directed by the Contracting Officer.
- (c) The Contractor shall protect from damage all existing improvements and utilities (1) at or near the work site and (2) on adjacent property of a third party, the locations of which are made known to or should be known by the Contractor. Prior to disturbing the ground at the construction site, the Contractor shall ensure that all underground utility lines are clearly marked.
- (d) The Contractor shall shore up, brace, underpin, secure, and protect as necessary all foundations and other parts of existing structures adjacent to, adjoining, and in the vicinity of the site, which may be affected by the excavations or other operations connected with the construction of the project.
- (e) Any equipment temporarily removed as a result of work under this contract shall be protected, cleaned, and replaced in the same condition as at the time of award of this contract.

-
- (f) New work which connects to existing work shall correspond in all respects with that to which it connects and/or be similar to existing work unless otherwise required by the specifications.
 - (g) No structural members shall be altered or in any way weakened without the written authorization of the Contracting Officer, unless such work is clearly specified in the plans or specifications.
 - (h) If the removal of the existing work exposes discolored or unfinished surfaces, or work out of alignment, such surfaces shall be refinished, or the material replaced as necessary to make the continuous work uniform and harmonious. This, however, shall not be construed to require the refinishing or reconstruction of dissimilar finishes previously exposed, or finished surfaces in good condition, but in different planes or on different levels when brought together by the removal of intervening work, unless such refinishing or reconstruction is specified in the plans or specifications.
 - (i) The Contractor shall give all required notices to any adjoining or adjacent property owner or other party before the commencement of any work.
 - (j) The Contractor shall indemnify and save harmless the PHA from any damages on account of settlement or the loss of lateral support of adjoining property, any damages from changes in topography affecting drainage, and from all loss or expense and all damages for which the PHA may become liable in consequence of such injury or damage to adjoining and adjacent structures and their premises.
 - (k) The Contractor shall repair any damage to vegetation, structures, equipment, utilities, or improvements, including those that are the property of a third party, resulting from failure to comply with the requirements of this contract or failure to exercise reasonable care in performing the work. If the Contractor fails or refuses to repair the damage promptly, the Contracting Officer may have the necessary work performed and charge the cost to the Contractor.

17. Temporary Buildings and Transportation of Materials

- (a) Temporary buildings (e.g., storage sheds, shops, offices, sanitary facilities) and utilities may be erected by the Contractor only with the approval of the Contracting Officer and shall be built with labor and materials furnished by the Contractor without expense to the PHA. The temporary buildings and utilities shall remain the property of the Contractor and shall be removed by the Contractor at its expense upon completion of the work. With the written consent of the Contracting Officer, the buildings and utilities may be abandoned and need not be removed.
- (b) The Contractor shall, as directed by the Contracting Officer, use only established roadways, or use temporary roadways constructed by the Contractor when and as authorized by the Contracting Officer. When materials are transported in prosecuting the work, vehicles shall not be loaded beyond the loading capacity recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle or prescribed by any federal, state, or local law or regulation. When it is necessary to cross curbs or sidewalks, the Contractor shall protect them from damage. The Contractor shall repair or pay for the repair of any damaged curbs, sidewalks, or roads.

18. Clean Air and Water

The contractor shall comply with the Clean Air Act, as amended, 42 USC 7401 et seq., the Federal Water Pollution Control Water Act, as amended, 33 U.S.C. 1251 et seq., and standards issued pursuant thereto in the facilities in which this contract is to be performed.

19. Energy Efficiency

The Contractor shall comply with mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (Pub.L. 94-163) for the State in which the work under the contract is performed.

20. Inspection and Acceptance of Construction

- (a) Definitions. As used in this clause -
 - (1) "Acceptance" means the act of an authorized representative of the PHA by which the PHA approves and assumes ownership of the work performed under this contract. Acceptance may be partial or complete.
 - (2) "Inspection" means examining and testing the work performed under the contract (including, when appropriate, raw materials, equipment, components, and intermediate assemblies) to determine whether it conforms to contract requirements.
 - (3) "Testing" means that element of inspection that determines the properties or elements, including functional operation of materials, equipment, or their components, by the application of established scientific principles and procedures.
- (b) The Contractor shall maintain an adequate inspection system and perform such inspections as will ensure that the work performed under the contract conforms to contract requirements. All work is subject to PHA inspection and test at all places and at all reasonable times before acceptance to ensure strict compliance with the terms of the contract.
- (c) PHA inspections and tests are for the sole benefit of the PHA and do not: (1) relieve the Contractor of responsibility for providing adequate quality control measures; (2) relieve the Contractor of responsibility for loss or damage of the material before acceptance; (3) constitute or imply acceptance; or, (4) affect the continuing rights of the PHA after acceptance of the completed work under paragraph (j) below.
- (d) The presence or absence of the PHA inspector does not relieve the Contractor from any contract requirement, nor is the inspector authorized to change any term or condition of the specifications without the Contracting Officer's written authorization. All instructions and approvals with respect to the work shall be given to the Contractor by the Contracting Officer.
- (e) The Contractor shall promptly furnish, without additional charge, all facilities, labor, and material reasonably needed for performing such safe and convenient inspections and tests as may be required by the Contracting Officer. The PHA may charge to the Contractor any additional cost of inspection or test when work is not ready at the time specified by the Contractor for inspection or test, or when prior rejection makes reinspection or retest necessary. The PHA shall perform all inspections and tests in a manner that will not unnecessarily delay the work. Special, full size, and performance tests shall be performed as described in the contract.

-
- (f) The PHA may conduct routine inspections of the construction site on a daily basis.
 - (g) The Contractor shall, without charge, replace or correct work found by the PHA not to conform to contract requirements, unless the PHA decides that it is in its interest to accept the work with an appropriate adjustment in contract price. The Contractor shall promptly segregate and remove rejected material from the premises.
 - (h) If the Contractor does not promptly replace or correct rejected work, the PHA may (1) by contract or otherwise, replace or correct the work and charge the cost to the Contractor, or (2) terminate for default the Contractor's right to proceed.
 - (i) If any work requiring inspection is covered up without approval of the PHA, it must, if requested by the Contracting Officer, be uncovered at the expense of the Contractor. If at any time before final acceptance of the entire work, the PHA considers it necessary or advisable, to examine work already completed by removing or tearing it out, the Contractor, shall on request, promptly furnish all necessary facilities, labor, and material. If such work is found to be defective or nonconforming in any material respect due to the fault of the Contractor or its subcontractors, the Contractor shall defray all the expenses of the examination and of satisfactory reconstruction. If, however, such work is found to meet the requirements of the contract, the Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment to cover the cost of the examination and reconstruction, including, if completion of the work was thereby delayed, an extension of time.
 - (j) The Contractor shall notify the Contracting Officer, in writing, as to the date when in its opinion all or a designated portion of the work will be substantially completed and ready for inspection. If the Architect determines that the state of preparedness is as represented, the PHA will promptly arrange for the inspection. Unless otherwise specified in the contract, the PHA shall accept, as soon as practicable after completion and inspection, all work required by the contract or that portion of the work the Contracting Officer determines and designates can be accepted separately. Acceptance shall be final and conclusive except for latent defects, fraud, gross mistakes amounting to fraud, or the PHA's right under any warranty or guarantee.

21. Use and Possession Prior to Completion

- (a) The PHA shall have the right to take possession of or use any completed or partially completed part of the work. Before taking possession of or using any work, the Contracting Officer shall furnish the Contractor a list of items of work remaining to be performed or corrected on those portions of the work that the PHA intends to take possession of or use. However, failure of the Contracting Officer to list any item of work shall not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for complying with the terms of the contract. The PHA's possession or use shall not be deemed an acceptance of any work under the contract.
- (b) While the PHA has such possession or use, the Contractor shall be relieved of the responsibility for (1) the loss of or damage to the work resulting from the PHA's possession or use, notwithstanding the terms of the clause entitled Permits and Codes herein; (2) all maintenance costs on the areas occupied; and, (3) furnishing heat, light, power, and water used in the areas

occupied without proper remuneration therefore. If prior possession or use by the PHA delays the progress of the work or causes additional expense to the Contractor, an equitable adjustment shall be made in the contract price or the time of completion, and the contract shall be modified in writing accordingly.

22. Warranty of Title

The Contractor warrants good title to all materials, supplies, and equipment incorporated in the work and agrees to deliver the premises together with all improvements thereon free from any claims, liens or charges, and agrees further that neither it nor any other person, firm or corporation shall have any right to a lien upon the premises or anything appurtenant thereto.

23. Warranty of Construction

- (a) In addition to any other warranties in this contract, the Contractor warrants, except as provided in paragraph (j) of this clause, that work performed under this contract conforms to the contract requirements and is free of any defect in equipment, material, or workmanship performed by the Contractor or any subcontractor or supplier at any tier. This warranty shall continue for a period of _____ (one year unless otherwise indicated) from the date of final acceptance of the work. If the PHA takes possession of any part of the work before final acceptance, this warranty shall continue for a period of (one year unless otherwise indicated) from the date that the PHA takes possession.
- (b) The Contractor shall remedy, at the Contractor's expense, any failure to conform, or any defect. In addition, the Contractor shall remedy, at the Contractor's expense, any damage to PHA-owned or controlled real or personal property when the damage is the result of—
 - (1) The Contractor's failure to conform to contract requirements; or
 - (2) Any defects of equipment, material, workmanship or design furnished by the Contractor.
- (c) The Contractor shall restore any work damaged in fulfilling the terms and conditions of this clause. The Contractor's warranty with respect to work repaired or replaced will run for (one year unless otherwise indicated) from the date of repair or replacement.
- (d) The Contracting Officer shall notify the Contractor, in writing, within a reasonable time after the discovery of any failure, defect or damage.
- (e) If the Contractor fails to remedy any failure, defect, or damage within a reasonable time after receipt of notice, the PHA shall have the right to replace, repair or otherwise remedy the failure, defect, or damage at the Contractor's expense.
- (f) With respect to all warranties, express or implied, from subcontractors, manufacturers, or suppliers for work performed and materials furnished under this contract, the Contractor shall:
 - (1) Obtain all warranties that would be given in normal commercial practice;
 - (2) Require all warranties to be executed in writing, for the benefit of the PHA; and,
 - (3) Enforce all warranties for the benefit of the PHA.
- (g) In the event the Contractor's warranty under paragraph (a) of this clause has expired, the PHA may bring suit at its own expense to enforce a subcontractor's, manufacturer's or supplier's warranty.

- (h) Unless a defect is caused by the negligence of the Contractor or subcontractor or supplier at any tier, the Contractor shall not be liable for the repair of any defect of material or design furnished by the PHA nor for the repair of any damage that results from any defect in PHA furnished material or design.
- (i) Notwithstanding any provisions herein to the contrary, the establishment of the time periods in paragraphs (a) and (c) above relate only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the work, and have no relationship to the time within which its obligation to comply with the contract may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to its obligation other than specifically to correct the work.
- (j) This warranty shall not limit the PHA's rights under the Inspection and Acceptance of Construction clause of this contract with respect to latent defects, gross mistakes or fraud.

24. Prohibition Against Liens

The Contractor is prohibited from placing a lien on the PHA's property. This prohibition shall apply to all subcontractors at any tier and all materials suppliers.

Administrative Requirements

25. Contract Period

this contract within calendar days of the effective date of the contract, or within the time schedule established in the notice to proceed issued by the Contracting Officer.

26. Order of Provisions

In the event of a conflict between these General Conditions and the Specifications, the General Conditions shall prevail. In the event of a conflict between the contract and any applicable state or local law or regulation, the state or local law or regulation shall prevail; provided that such state or local law or regulation does not conflict with, or is less restrictive than applicable federal law, regulation, or Executive Order. In the event of such a conflict, applicable federal law, regulation, and Executive Order shall prevail.

27. Payments

- (a) The PHA shall pay the Contractor the price as provided in this contract.
- (b) The PHA shall make progress payments approximately every 30 days as the work proceeds, on estimates of work accomplished which meets the standards of quality established under the contract, as approved by the Contracting Officer. The PHA may, subject to written determination and approval of the Contracting Officer, make more frequent payments to contractors which are qualified small businesses.
- (c) Before the first progress payment under this contract, the Contractor shall furnish, in such detail as requested by the Contracting Officer, a breakdown of the total contract price showing the amount included therein for each principal category of the work, which shall substantiate the payment amount requested in order to provide a

basis for determining progress payments. The breakdown shall be approved by the Contracting Officer and must be acceptable to HUD. If the contract covers more than one project, the Contractor shall furnish a separate breakdown for each. The values and quantities employed in making up this breakdown are for determining the amount of progress payments and shall not be construed as a basis for additions to or deductions from the contract price. The Contractor shall prorate its overhead and profit over the construction period of the contract.

- (d) The Contractor shall submit, on forms provided by the PHA, periodic estimates showing the value of the work performed during each period based upon the approved

submitted not later than _____ days in advance of the date set for payment and are subject to correction and revision as required. The estimates must be approved by the Contracting Officer with the concurrence of the Architect prior to payment. If the contract covers more than one project, the Contractor shall furnish a separate progress payment estimate for each.

- (e) Along with each request for progress payments and the required estimates, the Contractor shall furnish the following certification, or payment shall not be made: I hereby certify, to the best of my knowledge and belief, that

- (1) The amounts requested are only for performance in accordance with the specifications, terms, and conditions of the contract;
- (2) Payments to subcontractors and suppliers have been made from previous payments received under the contract, and timely payments will be made from the proceeds of the payment covered by this certification, in accordance with subcontract agreements; and,
- (3) This request for progress payments does not include any amounts which the prime contractor intends to withhold or retain from a subcontractor or supplier in accordance with the terms and conditions of the subcontract.

Name: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

- (f) Except as otherwise provided in State law, the PHA shall retain ten (10) percent of the amount of progress payments until completion and acceptance of all work under the contract; except, that if upon completion of 50 percent of the work, the Contracting Officer, after consulting with the Architect, determines that the Contractor's performance and progress are satisfactory, the PHA may make the remaining payments in full for the work subsequently completed. If the Contracting Officer subsequently determines that the Contractor's performance and progress are unsatisfactory, the PHA shall reinstate the ten (10) percent (or other percentage as provided in State law) retainage until such time as the Contracting Officer determines that performance and progress are satisfactory.

- (g) The Contracting Officer may authorize material delivered on the site and preparatory work done to be taken into consideration when computing progress payments.

- Material delivered to the Contractor at locations other than the site may also be taken into consideration if the Contractor furnishes satisfactory evidence that (1) it has acquired title to such material; (2) the material is properly stored in a bonded warehouse, storage yard, or similar suitable place as may be approved by the Contracting Officer; (3) the material is insured to cover its full value; and (4) the material will be used to perform this contract. Before any progress payment which includes delivered material is made, the Contractor shall furnish such documentation as the Contracting Officer may require to assure the protection of the PHA's interest in such materials. The Contractor shall remain responsible for such stored material notwithstanding the transfer of title to the PHA.
- (h) All material and work covered by progress payments made shall, at the time of payment become the sole property of the PHA, but this shall not be construed as (1) relieving the Contractor from the sole responsibility for all material and work upon which payments have been made or the restoration of any damaged work; or, (2) waiving the right of the PHA to require the fulfillment of all of the terms of the contract. In the event the work of the Contractor has been damaged by other contractors or persons other than employees of the PHA in the course of their employment, the Contractor shall restore such damaged work without cost to the PHA and to seek redress for its damage only from those who directly caused it.
- (i) The PHA shall make the final payment due the Contractor under this contract after (1) completion and final acceptance of all work; and (2) presentation of release of all claims against the PHA arising by virtue of this contract, other than claims, in stated amounts, that the Contractor has specifically excepted from the operation of the release. Each such exception shall embrace no more than one claim, the basis and scope of which shall be clearly defined. The amounts for such excepted claims shall not be included in the request for final payment. A release may also be required of the assignee if the Contractor's claim to amounts payable under this contract has been assigned.
- (j) Prior to making any payment, the Contracting Officer may require the Contractor to furnish receipts or other evidence of payment from all persons performing work and supplying material to the Contractor, if the Contracting Officer determines such evidence is necessary to substantiate claimed costs.
- (k) The PHA shall not: (1) determine or adjust any claims for payment or disputes arising there under between the Contractor and its subcontractors or material suppliers; or, (2) withhold any moneys for the protection of the subcontractors or material suppliers. The failure or refusal of the PHA to withhold moneys from the Contractor shall in nowise impair the obligations of any surety or sureties under any bonds furnished under this contract.

28. Contract Modifications

- (a) Only the Contracting Officer has authority to modify any term or condition of this contract. Any contract modification shall be authorized in writing.
- (b) The Contracting Officer may modify the contract unilaterally (1) pursuant to a specific authorization stated in a contract clause (e.g., Changes); or (2) for administrative matters which do not change the rights or

responsibilities of the parties (e.g., change in the PHA address). All other contract modifications shall be in the form of supplemental agreements signed by the Contractor and the Contracting Officer.

- (c) When a proposed modification requires the approval of HUD prior to its issuance (e.g., a change order that exceeds the PHA's approved threshold), such modification shall not be effective until the required approval is received by the PHA.

29. Changes

- (a) The Contracting Officer may, at any time, without notice to the sureties, by written order designated or indicated to be a change order, make changes in the work within the general scope of the contract including changes: (1) In the specifications (including drawings and designs); (2) In the method or manner of performance of the work; (3) PHA-furnished facilities, equipment, materials, services, or site; or, (4) Directing the acceleration in the performance of the work.
- (b) Any other written order or oral order (which, as used in this paragraph (b), includes direction, instruction, interpretation, or determination) from the Contracting Officer that causes a change shall be treated as a change order under this clause; provided, that the Contractor gives the Contracting Officer written notice stating (1) the date, circumstances and source of the order and (2) that the Contractor regards the order as a change order.
- (c) Except as provided in this clause, no order, statement or conduct of the Contracting Officer shall be treated as a change under this clause or entitle the Contractor to an equitable adjustment.
- (d) If any change under this clause causes an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or the time required for the performance of any part of the work under this contract, whether or not changed by any such order, the Contracting Officer shall make an equitable adjustment and modify the contract in writing. However, except for a adjustment based on defective specifications, no proposal for any change under paragraph (b) above shall be allowed for any costs incurred more than 20 days (5 days for oral orders) before the Contractor gives written notice as required. In the case of defective specifications for which the PHA is responsible, the equitable adjustment shall include any increased cost reasonably incurred by the Contractor in attempting to comply with the defective specifications.
- (e) The Contractor must assert its right to an adjustment under this clause within 30 days after (1) receipt of a written change order under paragraph (a) of this clause, or (2) the furnishing of a written notice under paragraph (b) of this clause, by submitting a written statement describing the general nature and the amount of the proposal. If the facts justify it, the Contracting Officer may extend the period for submission. The proposal may be included in the notice required under paragraph (b) above. No proposal by the Contractor for an equitable adjustment shall be allowed if asserted after final payment under this contract.
- (f) The Contractor's written proposal for equitable adjustment shall be submitted in the form of a lump sum proposal supported with an itemized breakdown of all increases and decreases in the contract in at least the following details:

- (1) **Direct Costs.** Materials (list individual items, the quantity and unit cost of each, and the aggregate cost); Transportation and delivery costs associated with materials; Labor breakdowns by hours or unit costs (identified with specific work to be performed); Construction equipment exclusively necessary for the change; Costs of preparation and/ or revision to shop drawings resulting from the change; Worker's Compensation and Public Liability Insurance; Employment taxes under FICA and FUTA; and, Bond Costs when size of change warrants revision.
- (2) **Indirect Costs.** Indirect costs may include overhead, general and administrative expenses, and fringe benefits not normally treated as direct costs.
- (3) **Profit.** The amount of profit shall be negotiated and may vary according to the nature, extent, and complexity of the work required by the change. The allowability of the direct and indirect costs shall be determined in accordance with the Contract Cost Principles and Procedures for Commercial Firms in Part 31 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation (48 CFR 1-31), as implemented by HUD Handbook 2210.18, in effect on the date of this contract. The Contractor shall not be allowed a profit on the profit received by any subcontractor. Equitable adjustments for deleted work shall include a credit for profit and may include a credit for indirect costs. On proposals covering both increases and decreases in the amount of the contract, the application of indirect costs and profit shall be on the net-change in direct costs for the Contractor or subcontractor performing the work.
- (g) The Contractor shall include in the proposal its request for time extension (if any), and shall include sufficient information and dates to demonstrate whether and to what extent the change will delay the completion of the contract in its entirety.
- (h) The Contracting Officer shall act on proposals within 30 days after their receipt, or notify the Contractor of the date when such action will be taken.
- (i) Failure to reach an agreement on any proposal shall be a dispute under the clause entitled Disputes herein. Nothing in this clause, however, shall excuse the Contractor from proceeding with the contract as changed.
- (j) Except in an emergency endangering life or property, no change shall be made by the Contractor without a prior order from the Contracting Officer.

30. Suspension of Work

- (a) The Contracting Officer may order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay, or interrupt all or any part of the work of this contract for the period of time that the Contracting Officer determines appropriate for the convenience of the PHA.
- (b) If the performance of all or any part of the work is, for an unreasonable period of time, suspended, delayed, or interrupted (1) by an act of the Contracting Officer in the administration of this contract, or (2) by the Contracting Officer's failure to act within the time specified (or within a reasonable time if not specified) in this contract an adjustment shall be made for any increase in the cost of performance of the contract (excluding profit) necessarily caused by such unreasonable suspension, delay, or interruption and the contract modified in writing accordingly. However, no adjustment shall be made under this clause for any suspension, delay, or interruption to the extent that performance would have

been so suspended, delayed, or interrupted by any other cause, including the fault or negligence of the Contractor or for which any equitable adjustment is provided for or excluded under any other provision of this contract.

- (c) A claim under this clause shall not be allowed (1) for any costs incurred more than 20 days before the Contractor shall have notified the Contracting Officer in writing of the act or failure to act involved (but this requirement shall not apply as to a claim resulting from a suspension order); and, (2) unless the claim, in an amount stated, is asserted in writing as soon as practicable after the termination of the suspension, delay, or interruption, but not later than the date of final payment under the contract.

31. Disputes

- (a) "Claim," as used in this clause, means a written demand or written assertion by one of the contracting parties seeking, as a matter of right, the payment of money in a sum certain, the adjustment or interpretation of contract terms, or other relief arising under or relating to the contract. A claim arising under the contract, unlike a claim relating to the contract, is a claim that can be resolved under a contract clause that provides for the relief sought by the claimant. A voucher, invoice, or other routine request for payment that is not in dispute when submitted is not a claim. The submission may be converted to a claim by complying with the requirements of this clause, if it is disputed either as to liability or amount or is not acted upon in a reasonable time.
- (b) Except for disputes arising under the clauses entitled Labor Standards - Davis Bacon and Related Acts, herein, all disputes arising under or relating to this contract, including any claims for damages for the alleged breach thereof which are not disposed of by agreement, shall be resolved under this clause.
- (c) All claims by the Contractor shall be made in writing and submitted to the Contracting Officer for a written decision. A claim by the PHA against the Contractor shall be subject to a written decision by the Contracting Officer.
- (d) The Contracting Officer shall, within 60 (unless otherwise indicated) days after receipt of the request, decide the claim or notify the Contractor of the date by which the decision will be made.
- (e) The Contracting Officer's decision shall be final unless the Contractor (1) appeals in writing to a higher level in the PHA in accordance with the PHA's policy and procedures, (2) refers the appeal to an independent mediator or arbitrator, or (3) files suit in a court of competent jurisdiction. Such appeal must be made within (30 unless otherwise indicated) days after receipt of the Contracting Officer's decision.
- (f) The Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of this contract, pending final resolution of any request for relief, claim, appeal, or action arising under or relating to the contract, and comply with any decision of the Contracting Officer.

32. Default

- (a) If the Contractor refuses or fails to prosecute the work, or any separable part thereof, with the diligence that will insure its completion within the time specified in this contract, or any extension thereof, or fails to complete said work within this time, the Contracting Officer may, by written notice to the Contractor, terminate the right to

- proceed with the work (or separable part of the work) that has been delayed. In this event, the PHA may take over the work and complete it, by contract or otherwise, and may take possession of and use any materials, equipment, and plant on the work site necessary for completing the work. The Contractor and its sureties shall be liable for any damage to the PHA resulting from the Contractor's refusal or failure to complete the work within the specified time, whether or not the Contractor's right to proceed with the work is terminated. This liability includes any increased costs incurred by the PHA in completing the work.
- (b) The Contractor's right to proceed shall not be terminated or the Contractor charged with damages under this clause if—
- (1) The delay in completing the work arises from unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor. Examples of such causes include (i) acts of God, or of the public enemy, (ii) acts of the PHA or other governmental entity in either its sovereign or contractual capacity, (iii) acts of another contractor in the performance of a contract with the PHA, (iv) fires, (v) floods, (vi) epidemics, (vii) quarantine restrictions, (viii) strikes, (ix) freight embargoes, (x) unusually severe weather, or (xi) delays of subcontractors or suppliers at any tier arising from unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of both the Contractor and the subcontractors or suppliers; and
- (2) The Contractor, within days (10 days unless otherwise indicated) from the beginning of such delay (unless extended by the Contracting Officer) notifies the Contracting Officer in writing of the causes of delay. The Contracting Officer shall ascertain the facts and the extent of the delay. If, in the judgment of the Contracting Officer, the findings of fact warrant such action, time for completing the work shall be extended by written modification to the contract. The findings of the Contracting Officer shall be reduced to a written decision which shall be subject to the provisions of the Disputes clause of this contract.
- (c) If, after termination of the Contractor's right to proceed, it is determined that the Contractor was not in default, or that the delay was excusable, the rights and obligations of the parties will be the same as if the termination had been for convenience of the PHA.

33. Liquidated Damages

- (a) If the Contractor fails to complete the work within the time specified in the contract, or any extension, as specified in the clause entitled Default of this contract, the Contractor shall pay to the PHA as liquidated damages, the sum of \$ _____ [Contracting Officer insert amount] for each day of delay. If different completion dates are specified in the contract for separate parts or stages of the work, the amount of liquidated damages shall be assessed on those parts or stages which are delayed. To the extent that the Contractor's delay or nonperformance is excused under another clause in this contract, liquidated damages shall not be due the PHA. The Contractor remains liable for damages caused other than by delay.
- (b) If the PHA terminates the Contractor's right to proceed, the resulting damage will consist of liquidated damages until such reasonable time as may be required for final

completion of the work together with any increased costs occasioned the PHA in completing the work.

(c) If the PHA does not terminate the Contractor's right to proceed, the resulting damage will consist of liquidated damages until the work is completed or accepted.

34. Termination for Convenience

- (a) The Contracting Officer may terminate this contract in whole, or in part, whenever the Contracting Officer determines that such termination is in the best interest of the PHA. Any such termination shall be effected by delivery to the Contractor of a Notice of Termination specifying the extent to which the performance of the work under the contract is terminated, and the date upon which such termination becomes effective.
- (b) If the performance of the work is terminated, either in whole or in part, the PHA shall be liable to the Contractor for reasonable and proper costs resulting from such termination upon the receipt by the PHA of a properly presented claim setting out in detail: (1) the total cost of the work performed to date of termination less the total amount of contract payments made to the Contractor; (2) the cost (including reasonable profit) of settling and paying claims under subcontracts and material orders for work performed and materials and supplies delivered to the site, payment for which has not been made by the PHA to the Contractor or by the Contractor to the subcontractor or supplier; (3) the cost of preserving and protecting the work already performed until the PHA or assignee takes possession thereof or assumes responsibility therefore; (4) the actual or estimated cost of legal and accounting services reasonably necessary to prepare and present the termination claim to the PHA; and (5) an amount constituting a reasonable profit on the value of the work performed by the Contractor.
- (c) The Contracting Officer will act on the Contractor's claim within days (60 days unless otherwise indicated) of receipt of the Contractor's claim.
- (d) Any disputes with regard to this clause are expressly made subject to the provisions of the Disputes clause of this contract.

35. Assignment of Contract

The Contractor shall not assign or transfer any interest in this contract; except that claims for monies due or to become due from the PHA under the contract may be assigned to a bank, trust company, or other financial institution. Such assignments of claims shall only be made with the written concurrence of the Contracting Officer. If the Contractor is a partnership, this contract shall inure to the benefit of the surviving or remaining member(s) of such partnership as approved by the Contracting Officer.

36. Insurance

- (a) Before commencing work, the Contractor and each subcontractor shall furnish the PHA with certificates of insurance showing the following insurance is in force and will insure all operations under the Contract:
- (1) Workers' Compensation, in accordance with state or Territorial Workers' Compensation laws.
- (2) Commercial General Liability with a combined single limit for bodily injury and property damage of not less than \$ _____ [Contracting Officer insert amount]

- per occurrence to protect the Contractor and each subcontractor against claims for bodily injury or death and damage to the property of others. This shall cover the use of all equipment, hoists, and vehicles on the site(s) not covered by Automobile Liability under (3) below. If the Contractor has a "claims made" policy, then the following additional requirements apply: the policy must provide a "retroactive date" which must be on or before the execution date of the Contract; and the extended reporting period may not be less than five years following the completion date of the Contract.
- (3) Automobile Liability on owned and non-owned motor vehicles used on the site(s) or in connection therewith for a combined single limit for bodily injury and property damage of not less than \$ _____. [Contracting Officer insert amount] per occurrence.
- (b) Before commencing work, the Contractor shall furnish the PHA with a certificate of insurance evidencing that Builder's Risk (fire and extended coverage) Insurance on all work in place and/or materials stored at the building site(s), including foundations and building equipment, is in force. The Builder's Risk Insurance shall be for the benefit of the Contractor and the PHA as their interests may appear and each shall be named in the policy or policies as an insured. The Contractor in installing equipment supplied by the PHA shall carry insurance on such equipment from the time the Contractor takes possession thereof until the Contract work is accepted by the PHA. The Builder's Risk Insurance need not be carried on excavations, piers, footings, or foundations until such time as work on the superstructure is started. It need not be carried on landscape work. Policies shall furnish coverage at all times for the full cash value of all completed construction, as well as materials in place and/or stored at the site(s), whether or not partial payment has been made by the PHA. The Contractor may terminate this insurance on buildings as of the date taken over for occupancy by the PHA. The Contractor is not required to carry Builder's Risk Insurance for modernization work which does not involve structural alterations or additions and where the PHA's existing fire and extended coverage policy can be endorsed to include such work.
- (c) All insurance shall be carried with companies which are financially responsible and admitted to do business in the State in which the project is located. If any such insurance is due to expire during the construction period, the Contractor (including subcontractors, as applicable) shall not permit the coverage to lapse and shall furnish evidence of coverage to the Contracting Officer. All certificates of insurance, as evidence of coverage, shall provide that no coverage may be canceled or non-renewed by the insurance company until at least 30 days prior written notice has been given to the Contracting Officer.

37. Subcontracts

- (a) Definitions. As used in this contract -
- (1) "Subcontract" means any contract, purchase order, or other purchase agreement, including modifications and change orders to the foregoing, entered into by a subcontractor to furnish supplies, materials, equipment, and services for the performance of the prime contract or a subcontract.

- (2) "Subcontractor" means any supplier, vendor, or firm that furnishes supplies, materials, equipment, or services to or for the Contractor or another subcontractor.
- (b) The Contractor shall not enter into any subcontract with any subcontractor who has been temporarily denied participation in a HUD program or who has been suspended or debarred from participating in contracting programs by any agency of the United States Government or of the state in which the work under this contract is to be performed.
- (c) The Contractor shall be as fully responsible for the acts or omissions of its subcontractors, and of persons either directly or indirectly employed by them as for the acts or omissions of persons directly employed by the Contractor.
- (d) The Contractor shall insert appropriate clauses in all subcontracts to bind subcontractors to the terms and conditions of this contract insofar as they are applicable to the work of subcontractors.
- (e) Nothing contained in this contract shall create any contractual relationship between any subcontractor and the PHA or between the subcontractor and HUD.

38. Subcontracting with Small and Minority Firms, Women's Business Enterprise, and Labor Surplus Area Firms

The Contractor shall take the following steps to ensure that, whenever possible, subcontracts are awarded to small business firms, minority firms, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms:

- (a) Placing qualified small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises on solicitation lists;
- (b) Ensuring that small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;
- (c) Dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises;
- (d) Establishing delivery schedules, where the requirements of the contract permit, which encourage participation by small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises; and
- (e) Using the services and assistance of the U.S. Small Business Administration, the Minority Business Development Agency of the U.S. Department of Commerce, and State and local governmental small business agencies.

39. Equal Employment Opportunity

During the performance of this contract, the Contractor agrees as follows:

- (a) The Contractor shall not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, religion, sex, national origin, or handicap.
- (b) The Contractor shall take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment without regard to their race, color, religion, sex, national origin, or handicap. Such action shall include, but not be limited to, (1) employment, (2) upgrading, (3) demotion, (4) transfer, (5) recruitment or recruitment advertising, (6) layoff or termination, (7) rates of pay or other forms of compensation, and (8) selection for training, including apprenticeship.

- (c) The Contractor shall post in conspicuous places available to employees and applicants for employment the notices to be provided by the Contracting Officer that explain this clause.
- (d) The Contractor shall, in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by or on behalf of the Contractor, state that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to race, color, religion, sex, national origin, or handicap.
- (e) The Contractor shall send, to each labor union or representative of workers with which it has a collective bargaining agreement or other contract or understanding, the notice to be provided by the Contracting Officer advising the labor union or workers' representative of the Contractor's commitments under this clause, and post copies of the notice in conspicuous places available to employees and applicants for employment.
- (f) The Contractor shall comply with Executive Order 11246, as amended, and the rules, regulations, and orders of the Secretary of Labor.
- (g) The Contractor shall furnish all information and reports required by Executive Order 11246, as amended, Section 503 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, and by rules, regulations, and orders of the Secretary of Labor, or pursuant thereto. The Contractor shall permit access to its books, records, and accounts by the Secretary of Labor for purposes of investigation to ascertain compliance with such rules, regulations, and orders.
- (h) In the event of a determination that the Contractor is not in compliance with this clause or any rule, regulation, or order of the Secretary of Labor, this contract may be canceled, terminated, or suspended in whole or in part, and the Contractor may be declared ineligible for further Government contracts, or Federally assisted construction contracts under the procedures authorized in Executive Order 11246, as amended. In addition, sanctions may be imposed and remedies invoked against the Contractor as provided in Executive Order 11246, as amended, the rules, regulations, and orders of the Secretary of Labor, or as otherwise provided by law.
- (i) The Contractor shall include the terms and conditions of this clause in every subcontract or purchase order unless exempted by the rules, regulations, or orders of the Secretary of Labor issued under Executive Order 11246, as amended, so that these terms and conditions will be binding upon each subcontractor or vendor. The Contractor shall take such action with respect to any subcontract or purchase order as the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development or the Secretary of Labor may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions, including sanctions for noncompliance; provided that if the Contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with, litigation with a subcontractor or vendor as a result of such direction, the Contractor may request the United States to enter into the litigation to protect the interests of the United States.
- (j) Compliance with the requirements of this clause shall be to the maximum extent consistent with, but not in derogation of, compliance with section 7(b) of the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act and the Indian Preference clause of this contract.
- 40. Employment, Training, and Contracting**
- Opportunities for Low-Income Persons, Section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968.**
- (a) The work to be performed under this contract is subject to the requirements of section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968, as amended, 12 U.S.C. 1701u (section 3). The purpose of section 3 is to ensure that employment and other economic opportunities generated by HUD assistance or HUD-assisted projects covered by section 3, shall, to the greatest extent feasible, be directed to low- and very low-income persons, particularly persons who are recipients of HUD assistance for housing.
- (b) The parties to this contract agree to comply with HUD's regulations in 24 CFR Part 135, which implement section 3. As evidenced by their execution of this contract, the parties to this contract certify that they are under no contractual or other impediment that would prevent them from complying with the Part 135 regulations.
- (c) The contractor agrees to send to each labor organization or representative of workers with which the contractor has a collective bargaining agreement or other understanding, if any, a notice advising the labor organization or workers' representative of the contractor's commitments under this section 3 clause, and will post copies of the notice in conspicuous places at the work site where both employees and applicants for training and employment positions can see the notice. The notice shall describe the section 3 preference, shall set forth minimum number and job titles subject to hire, availability of apprenticeship and training positions, the qualifications for each; and the name and location of the person(s) taking applications for each of the positions; and the anticipated date the work shall begin.
- (d) The contractor agrees to include this section 3 clause in every subcontract subject to compliance with regulations in 24 CFR Part 135, and agrees to take appropriate action, as provided in an applicable provision of the subcontract or in this section 3 clause, upon a finding that the subcontractor is in violation of the regulations in 24 CFR Part 135. The contractor will not subcontract with any subcontractor where the contractor has notice or knowledge that the subcontractor has been found in violation of the regulations in 24 CFR Part 135.
- (e) The contractor will certify that any vacant employment positions, including training positions, that are filled (1) after the contractor is selected but before the contract is executed, and (2) with persons other than those to whom the regulations of 24 CFR Part 135 require employment opportunities to be directed, were not filled to circumvent the contractor's obligations under 24 CFR Part 135.
- (f) Noncompliance with HUD's regulations in 24 CFR Part 135 may result in sanctions, termination of this contract for default, and debarment or suspension from future HUD assisted contracts.
- (g) With respect to work performed in connection with section 3 covered Indian housing assistance, section 7(b) of the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act (25 U.S.C. 450e) also applies to the work to be performed under this contract. Section 7(b) requires that to the greatest extent feasible (i) preference and opportunities for training and employment shall be given to Indians, and (ii) preference in the award of contracts and subcontracts shall be given to Indian organizations and Indian-owned Economic Enterprises. Parties to this contract that are subject to the provisions of section 3 and section 7(b) agree to comply with section 3 to the maximum extent feasible, but not in derogation of compliance with section 7(b).

41. Interest of Members of Congress

No member of or delegate to the Congress of the United States of America shall be admitted to any share or part of this contract or to any benefit that may arise therefrom.

42. Interest of Members, Officers, or Employees and Former Members, Officers, or Employees

No member, officer, or employee of the PHA, no member of the governing body of the locality in which the project is situated, no member of the governing body of the locality in which the PHA was activated, and no other public official of such locality or localities who exercises any functions or responsibilities with respect to the project, shall, during his or her tenure, or for one year thereafter, have any interest, direct or indirect, in this contract or the proceeds thereof.

43. Limitations on Payments made to Influence Certain Federal Financial Transactions

- (a) The Contractor agrees to comply with Section 1352 of Title 31, United States Code which prohibits the use of Federal appropriated funds to pay any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, and officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with any of the following covered Federal actions: the awarding of any Federal contract; the making of any Federal grant; the making of any Federal loan; the entering into of any cooperative agreement; or the modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.
- (b) The Contractor further agrees to comply with the requirement of the Act to furnish a disclosure (OMB Standard Form LLL, Disclosure of Lobbying Activities) if any funds other than Federal appropriated funds (including profit or fee received under a covered Federal transaction) have been paid, or will be paid, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

44. Royalties and Patents

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. It shall defend all suits or claims for infringement of any patent rights and shall save the PHA harmless from loss on account thereof; except that the PHA shall be responsible for all such loss when a particular design, process or the product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is specified and the Contractor has no reason to believe that the specified design, process, or product is an infringement. If, however, the Contractor has reason to believe that any design, process or product specified is an infringement of a patent, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Contracting Officer. Failure to give such notice shall make the Contractor responsible for resultant loss.

45. Examination and Retention of Contractor's Records

(a) The PHA, HUD, or Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives shall, until 3 years after final payment under this contract, have access to and the right to examine any of the Contractor's directly pertinent books, documents, papers, or other records involving transactions related to this contract for the purpose of making audit, examination, excerpts, and transcriptions.

(b) The Contractor agrees to include in first-tier subcontracts under this contract a clause substantially the same as paragraph (a) above. "Subcontract," as used in this clause, excludes purchase orders not exceeding \$10,000.

(c) The periods of access and examination in paragraphs (a) and (b) above for records relating to (1) appeals under the Disputes clause of this contract, (2) litigation or settlement of claims arising from the performance of this contract, or (3) costs and expenses of this contract to which the PHA, HUD, or Comptroller General or any of their duly authorized representatives has taken exception shall continue until disposition of such appeals, litigation, claims, or exceptions.

46. Labor Standards - Davis-Bacon and Related Acts

If the total amount of this contract exceeds \$2,000, the Federal labor standards set forth in the clause below shall apply to the development or construction work to be performed under the contract.

(a) Minimum Wages.

(1) All laborers and mechanics employed under this contract in the development or construction of the project(s) involved will be paid unconditionally and not less often than once a week, and without subsequent deduction or rebate on any account (except such payroll deductions as are permitted by regulations issued by the Secretary of Labor under the Copeland Act (29 CFR Part 3)), the full amount of wages and bona fide fringe benefits (or cash equivalents thereof) due at time of payment computed at rates not less than those contained in the wage determination of the Secretary of Labor which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, regardless of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between the Contractor and such laborers and mechanics. Contributions made or costs reasonably anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits under Section 1(b)(2) of the Davis-Bacon Act on behalf of laborers or mechanics are considered wages paid to such laborers or mechanics, subject to the provisions of 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(iv); also, regular contributions made or costs incurred for more than a weekly period (but not less often than quarterly) under plans, funds, or programs which cover the regular weekly period, are deemed to be constructively made or incurred during such weekly period. Such laborers and mechanics shall be paid the appropriate wage rate and fringe benefits in the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed, without regard to skill, except as provided in 29 CFR 5.5(a)(4). Laborers or mechanics performing work in more than one classification may be compensated at the rate specified for each classification for the time actually worked therein; provided, that the employer's payroll records accurately set forth the time spent in each classification in which work is performed. The wage determination (including any additional classification and wage rates conformed under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(ii) and the Davis-Bacon poster (WH-1321) shall

be posted at all times by the Contractor and its subcontractors at the site of the work in a prominent and accessible place where it can be easily seen by the workers.

- (2) (i) Any class of laborers or mechanics, including helpers, which is not listed in the wage determination and which is to be employed under the contract shall be classified in conformance with the wage determination. HUD shall approve an additional classification and wage rate and fringe benefits therefor only when all the following criteria have been met: (A) The work to be performed by the classification requested is not performed by a classification in the wage determination; and (B) The classification is utilized in the area by the construction industry; and (C) The proposed wage rate, including any bona fide fringe benefits, bears a reasonable relationship to the wage rates contained in the wage determination.
- (ii) If the Contractor and the laborers and mechanics to be employed in the classification (if known), or their representatives, and HUD or its designee agree on the classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits where appropriate), a report of the action taken shall be sent by HUD or its designee to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division, Employee Standards Administration, U.S. Department of Labor, Washington, DC 20210. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will approve, modify, or disapprove every additional classification action within 30 days of receipt and so advise HUD or its designee or will notify HUD or its designee within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.
- (iii) In the event the Contractor, the laborers or mechanics to be employed in the classification or their representatives, and HUD or its designee do not agree on the proposed classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits, where appropriate), HUD or its designee shall refer the questions, including the views of all interested parties and the recommendation of HUD or its designee, to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division for determination. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will issue a determination within 30 days of receipt and so advise HUD or its designee or will notify HUD or its designee within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.
- (iv) The wage rate (including fringe benefits where appropriate) determined pursuant to subparagraphs (a)(2)(ii) or (iii) of this clause shall be paid to all workers performing work in the classification under this contract from the first day on which work is performed in classification.
- (3) Whenever the minimum wage rate prescribed in the contract for a class of laborers or mechanics includes a fringe benefit which is not expressed as an hourly rate, the Contractor shall either pay the benefit as stated in the wage determination or shall pay another bona fide fringe benefit or an hourly cash equivalent thereof.
- (4) If the Contractor does not make payments to a trustee or other third person, the Contractor may consider as part of the wages of any laborer or mechanic the

amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing bona fide fringe benefits under a plan or program; provided, that the Secretary of Labor has found, upon the written request of the Contractor, that the applicable standards of the Davis-Bacon Act have been met. The Secretary of Labor may require the Contractor to set aside in a separate account assets for the meeting of obligations under the plan or program.

- (b) Withholding of funds. HUD or its designee shall, upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor, withhold or cause to be withheld from the Contractor under this contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime Contractor, or any other Federally-assisted contract subject to Davis-Bacon prevailing wage requirements, which is held by the same prime Contractor, so much of the accrued payments or advances as may be considered necessary to pay laborers and mechanics, including apprentices, trainees, and helpers, employed by the Contractor or any subcontractor the full amount of wages required by the contract. In the event of failure to pay any laborer or mechanic, including any apprentice, trainee, or helper, employed or working in the construction or development of the project, all or part of the wages required by the contract, HUD or its designee may, after written notice to the Contractor, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds until such violations have ceased. HUD or its designee may, after written notice to the Contractor, disburse such amounts withheld for and on account of the Contractor or subcontractor to the respective employees to whom they are due.

(c) Payrolls and basic records.

- (1) Payrolls and basic records relating thereto shall be maintained by the Contractor during the course of the work and preserved for a period of three years thereafter for all laborers and mechanics working in the construction or development of the project. Such records shall contain the name, address, and social security number of each such worker, his or her correct classification, hourly rates of wages paid (including rates of contributions or costs anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits or cash equivalents thereof of the types described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act), daily and weekly number of hours worked, deductions made, and actual wages paid. Whenever the Secretary of Labor has found, under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(iv), that the wages of any laborer or mechanic include the amount of costs reasonably anticipated in providing benefits under a plan or program described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act, the Contractor shall maintain records which show that the commitment to provide such benefits is enforceable, that the plan or program is financially responsible, and that the plan or program has been communicated in writing to the laborers or mechanics affected, and records which show the costs anticipated or the actual cost incurred in providing such benefits. Contractors employing apprentices or trainees under approved programs shall maintain written evidence of the registration of apprenticeship programs and certification of trainee programs, the registration of the apprentices and trainees, and the ratios and wage rates prescribed in the applicable programs.

- (2) (i) The Contractor shall submit weekly for each week in which any contract work is performed a copy of all payrolls to the Contracting Officer for transmission to HUD or its designee. The payrolls submitted shall set out accurately and completely all of the information required to be maintained under subparagraph (c)(1) of this clause. This information may be submitted in any form desired. Optional Form WH-347 (Federal Stock Number 029-005-00014-1) is available for this purpose and may be purchased from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402. The Contractor is responsible for the submission of copies of payrolls by all subcontractors. (Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under OMB Control Number 1214-0149.)
- (ii) Each payroll submitted shall be accompanied by a "Statement of Compliance," signed by the Contractor or subcontractor or his or her agent who pays or supervises the payment of the persons employed under the contract and shall certify the following:
- (A) That the payroll for the payroll period contains the information required to be maintained under paragraph (c) (1) of this clause and that such information is correct and complete;
- (B) That each laborer or mechanic (including each helper, apprentice, and trainee) employed on the contract during the payroll period has been paid the full weekly wages earned, without rebate, either directly or indirectly, and that no deductions have been made either directly or indirectly from the full wages earned, other than permissible deductions as set forth in 29 CFR Part 3; and
- (C) That each laborer or mechanic has been paid not less than the applicable wage rates and fringe benefits or cash equivalents for the classification of work performed, as specified in the applicable wage determination incorporated into the contract.
- (iii) The weekly submission of a properly executed certification set forth on the reverse side of Optional Form WH-347 shall satisfy the requirements for submission of the "Statement of Compliance" required by subparagraph (c)(2)(ii) of this clause.
- (iv) The falsification of any of the above certifications may subject the Contractor or subcontractor to civil or criminal prosecution under Section 1001 of Title 18 and Section 3729 of Title 31 of the United States Code.
- (3) The Contractor or subcontractor shall make the records required under subparagraph (c)(1) available for inspection, copying, or transcription by authorized representatives of HUD or its designee, the Contracting Officer, or the Department of Labor and shall permit such representatives to interview employees during working hours on the job. If the Contractor or subcontractor fails to submit the required records or to make them available, HUD or its designee may, after written notice to the Contractor, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds. Furthermore, failure to submit the required records upon request or to make such records available may be grounds for debarment action pursuant to 29 CFR 5.12.
- (d) (1) Apprentices. Apprentices will be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work they performed when they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration, Office of Apprenticeship and Training, Employer and Labor Services (OATELS), or with a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by OATELS, or if a person is employed in his or her first 90 days of probationary employment as an apprentice in such an apprenticeship program, who is not individually registered in the program, but who has been certified by OATELS or a State Apprenticeship Agency (where appropriate) to be eligible for probationary employment as an apprentice. The allowable ratio of apprentices to journeymen on the job site in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to the Contractor as to the entire work force under the registered program. Any worker listed on a payroll at an apprentice wage rate, who is not registered or otherwise employed as stated in this paragraph, shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any apprentice performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. Where a contractor is performing construction on a project in a locality other than that in which its program is registered, the ratios and wage rates (expressed in percentages of the journeyman's hourly rate) specified in the Contractor's or subcontractor's registered program shall be observed. Every apprentice must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the registered program for the apprentice's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeyman hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Apprentices shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the apprenticeship program. If the apprenticeship program does not specify fringe benefits, apprentices must be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination for the applicable classification. If the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division determines that a different practice prevails for the applicable apprentice classification, fringes shall be paid in accordance with that determination. In the event OATELS, or a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by OATELS, withdraws approval of an apprenticeship program, the Contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize apprentices at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.
- (2) Trainees. Except as provided in 29 CFR 5.16, trainees will not be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work performed unless they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a program which has received prior approval, evidenced by formal certification by the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration. The ratio of trainees to journeymen on the job site shall not be greater than permitted under

- the plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration. Every trainee must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the approved program for the trainee's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeyman hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Trainees shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the trainee program. If the trainee program does not mention fringe benefits, trainees shall be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed in the wage determination unless the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division determines that there is an apprenticeship program associated with the corresponding journeyman wage rate in the wage determination which provides for less than full fringe benefits for apprentices. Any employee listed on the payroll at a trainee rate who is not registered and participating in a training plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate in the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any trainee performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate in the wage determination for the work actually performed. In the event the Employment and Training Administration withdraws approval of a training program, the Contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize trainees at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.
- (3) Equal employment opportunity. The utilization of apprentices, trainees, and journeymen under this clause shall be in conformity with the equal employment opportunity requirements of Executive Order 11246, as amended, and 29 CFR Part 30.
- (e) Compliance with Copeland Act requirements. The Contractor shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR Part 3, which are hereby incorporated by reference in this contract.
- (f) Contract termination; debarment. A breach of this contract clause may be grounds for termination of the contract and for debarment as a Contractor and a subcontractor as provided in 29 CFR 5.12.
- (g) Compliance with Davis-Bacon and related Act requirements. All rulings and interpretations of the Davis-Bacon and related Acts contained in 29 CFR Parts 1, 3, and 5 are herein incorporated by reference in this contract.
- (h) Disputes concerning labor standards. Disputes arising out of the labor standards provisions of this clause shall not be subject to the general disputes clause of this contract. Such disputes shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures of the Department of Labor set forth in 29 CFR Parts 5, 6, and 7. Disputes within the meaning of this clause include disputes between the Contractor (or any of its subcontractors) and the PHA, HUD, the U.S. Department of Labor, or the employees or their representatives.
- (i) Certification of eligibility.
- (1) By entering into this contract, the Contractor certifies that neither it (nor he or she) nor any person or firm who has an interest in the Contractor's firm is a person or firm ineligible to be awarded contracts by the United States Government by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).
- (2) No part of this contract shall be subcontracted to any person or firm ineligible for award of a United States Government contract by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).
- (3) The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the U. S. Criminal Code, 18 U.S.C. 1001.
- (j) Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act. As used in this paragraph, the terms "laborers" and "mechanics" include watchmen and guards.
- (1) Overtime requirements. No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the contract work which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics, including watchmen and guards, shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic in any workweek in which the individual is employed on such work to work in excess of 40 hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of 40 hours in such workweek.
- (2) Violation; liability for unpaid wages; liquidated damages. In the event of any violation of the provisions set forth in subparagraph (j)(1) of this clause, the Contractor and any subcontractor responsible therefor shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such Contractor and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States (in the case of work done under contract for the District of Columbia or a territory, to such District or to such territory), for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic (including watchmen and guards) employed in violation of the provisions set forth in subparagraph (j)(1) of this clause, in the sum of \$10 for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard workweek of 40 hours without payment of the overtime wages required by provisions set forth in subparagraph (j)(1) of this clause.
- (3) Withholding for unpaid wages and liquidated damages. HUD or its designee shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any moneys payable on account of work performed by the Contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any Federal contract with the same prime Contractor, or any other Federally-assisted contract subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, which is held by the same prime Contractor, such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such Contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the provisions set forth in subparagraph (j)(2) of this clause.
- (k) Subcontracts. The Contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts all the provisions contained in this clause, and such other clauses as HUD or its designee may by appropriate instructions require, and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these provisions in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime Contractor shall be responsible for the compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with all these provisions.

47. Non-Federal Prevailing Wage Rates

- (a) Any prevailing wage rate (including basic hourly rate and any fringe benefits), determined under State or tribal law to be prevailing, with respect to any employee in any trade or position employed under the contract, is inapplicable to the contract and shall not be enforced against the Contractor or any subcontractor, with respect to employees engaged under the contract whenever such non-Federal prevailing wage rate exceeds:
 - (1) The applicable wage rate determined by the Secretary of Labor pursuant to the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 3141 et seq.) to be prevailing in the locality with respect to such trade;
- (b) An applicable apprentice wage rate based thereon specified in an apprenticeship program registered with the U.S. Department of Labor (DOL) or a DOL-recognized State Apprenticeship Agency; or
- (c) An applicable trainee wage rate based thereon specified in a DOL-certified trainee program.

48. Procurement of Recovered Materials.

- (a) In accordance with Section 6002 of the Solid Waste Disposal Act, as amended by the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act, the Contractor shall procure items designated in guidelines of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) at 40 CFR Part 247 that contain the highest percentage of recovered materials practicable, consistent with maintaining a satisfactory level of competition. The Contractor shall procure items designated in the EPA guidelines that contain the highest percentage of recovered materials practicable unless the Contractor determines that such items: (1) are not reasonably available in a reasonable period of time; (2) fail to meet reasonable performance standards, which shall be determined on the basis of the guidelines of the National Institute of Standards and Technology, if applicable to the item; or (3) are only available at an unreasonable price.
- (b) Paragraph (a) of this clause shall apply to items purchased under this contract where: (1) the Contractor purchases in excess of \$10,000 of the item under this contract; or (2) during the preceding Federal fiscal year, the Contractor: (i) purchased any amount of the items for use under a contract that was funded with Federal appropriations and was with a Federal agency or a State agency or agency of a political subdivision of a State; and (ii) purchased a total of in excess of \$10,000 of the item both under and outside that contract.

SECTION 4

SUPPLEMENTAL GENERAL CONDITIONS

SCCHA SUPPLEMENT TO THE GENERAL CONDITIONS

- A. The Contractor shall furnish all labor, material, equipment and services necessary to complete work as specified under this contract.
- B. The Contractor has no right to assign or subcontract the work under this contract of any part thereof to another party without the expressed written approval of the owner.
- C. The contractor will be required to begin work within 10 working days of receipt of written Notice to Proceed by the Owner.
- D. Payment under this contract will be partial payments at approximately 30-day intervals. Payment less 10% retainage will be made after submission of proper documents and receipt of funds from HUD. The Owner reserves the right to withhold payment for any work not completed in a proper workmanlike manner by notifying the Contractor of the action required to remedy the condition.
- E. *Drawings and specifications will be available for viewing on the internet at: www.hurst-rosche.com. The documents are being provided for reference purposes only. Bidders must obtain a signed and sealed hard copy set of the bidding documents, including bid form(s), from the offices of SCCHA to submit a bid for this project.*
- F. Contractor is responsible for application, payment and obtaining all necessary permits and licenses required for the work specified in this contract.
- G. The Contractor is responsible for obtaining additional copies of plans and specifications at the contractor's expense from the Architect.
- H. Under no circumstances shall trash or debris be allowed to accumulate on premises. All debris resulting from the work shall be removed by the contractor at the end of each work day.
- I. Contractor is requested to have a work force comprised of at least 20% minority subcontractors and/or material suppliers.
- J. Before submitting their proposals, bidder shall carefully examine the drawings and specifications, waist the project site, and fully inform themselves as to the existing conditions. All bidders shall make their proposals to carry out and complete the work under such conditions and in strict accordance with the drawing, specifications, and local codes and ordinances.
- K. Contractor may be required to work between established hours of 7:30 a.m. to 5:30 p.m.
- L. The Contractor agrees to warrant the workmanship and materials of the Contract work against and defect for a period of one (1) year from date of Final Payment in the form of a Good Faith Agreement. Contracts exceeding \$100,000.00 will require both a Good Faith Agreement and a Warranty Bond for 100% of the contracted amount.
- M. Contractor is responsible for security of the buildings, materials, equipment and supplies related to this contract.
- N. Contractor will not be authorized to start work or gather materials related to this contract until receipt of written Notice of Award and Notice to Proceed from Owner. Contracts over \$70,000.00 must be approved by the SCCHA Board of Commissioners prior to issuance of Notice of Award and Notice to Proceed.
- O. The Contractor or Subcontractor is prohibited from placing lien on the PHA's property.
- P. No vehicles will be allowed on non-street areas of the property. Any damages created by construction vehicles, employee vehicles or delivery vehicles will be charged to the Contractor.
- Q. At no time will any work be charged on an hourly rate or per hour basis.
- R. The "Contractor shall provide cost proposals for all contract modifications on the enclosed forms; Construction Cost Estimate Breakdown (CCEB) and Construction Cost Estimate Breakdown Summary (CCEBS3 12/97).

SECTION 5

ADDITIONAL INSURED ENDORSEMENT SAMPLE

Eff: 01/01/98

SAMPLE COPY

ADDITIONAL INSURED ENDORSEMENT

Reference is made to the attached Certificate as To Evidence of Insurance.

It is agreed that: St. Clair County Housing Authority
1790 South 74th Street, Belleville, IL 62223

The person or organization to which the attached Certificate is issued is an additional insured. This applies only with respect to liability arising out of the acts or omissions of the named insured. It applies only to the coverage's indicated on the Certificate.

This extension of coverage does not apply:

1. To liability arising out of the negligence of the additional insured, its agents or employees, unless the agent or employee is the named insured.
2. To any defect of material, design or workmanship in any equipment of which the additional insured is the owner, lessor, manufacturer, mortgagee, or beneficiary.
3. To any vehicle liability when the named insured is not the owner or does not have care, custody, or control of the vehicle.

The intent of this endorsement is to provide the coverage as stated above and in the Certificate. If any court shall interpret this endorsement to provide coverage other than what is stated above then our limits of liability shall be the limits of bodily injury liability and property damage liability specified by any motor vehicle financial responsibility law of the state, province, or territory where the named insured resides. If there is no such law, our limit of liability shall be \$5,000 on account of bodily injury sustained by one person in any one occurrence and subject to this provision respecting each person, \$10,000 on account of bodily injury sustained by two or more persons in any one occurrence. Our total liability for all damages because of all property damage sustained by one or more persons or organizations as the result of any one occurrence shall not exceed \$5,000. This endorsement does not increase the coverage limit.

This endorsement becomes a part of the policy to which it is attached and supersedes and controls anything in the policy contrary hereto but is otherwise subject to the Declarations, Insuring Agreements, Exclusions and Conditions thereof.

SECTION 6

STANDARD FORM AGREEMENT

STANDARD FORM AGREEMENT
BETWEEN
ST. CLAIR COUNTY HOUSING AUTHORITY
AND
CONTRACTOR

Be it understood that as of this day, _____, the St. Clair County Housing Authority (hereafter called the "Owner") has entered into an Agreement with _____ (hereafter called the "Contractor") for the work "Boiler, HVAC and Water Heater Replacement" as proposed on; March 26th, 2020 for the sum of \$_____ subject to the conditions herein contained.

ARTICLE 1
CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

The Contract Documents consist of this Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, and all modifications issued subsequent thereto. These form the Contract and all are fully a part of the Contract as if attached to this Agreement or repeated herein. An enumeration of the Contractor Documents appears in Article 20.

ARTICLE 2
WORK TO BE PERFORMED

The contractor shall perform all the work required by the Contract Documents for:

Description of work: Replace existing boilers, HVAC and water heaters as specified.

Property: AMPs 4, 5 and 6

Location: Belleville, Washington Park and New Athens, Illinois

ARTICLE 3
PERFORMANCE BOND

Prior to the "Notice to Proceed" the Contractor agrees to provide a performance and payment bond for 100% of the contract price.

ARTICLE 4
INSURANCE

Contractor shall provide proof of Comprehensive General Public Liability and Automobile Insurance with a minimum of \$1,000,000 limit per occurrence with a minimum of 2,000,000 aggregate limit. Certificate shall have original signatures on an original Certificate of Insurance. Copies, including those electronically transmitted, are not acceptable. St. Clair County Housing Authority, 1790 S. 74th Street, Belleville, IL 62223, shall be listed on the Certificate as an Additional Insured with an Additional Insured Endorsement Form as an attachment to the Certificate of Insurance. Additional insured coverage must be primary over any other valid and collectible insurance available to SCCHA whether primary, excess, contingent or on any other

basis. The insurer shall change the language in the "Cancellation Block" to read "the issuing company **shall** mail written notice to the certificate holder named" and statements such as "endeavor to notify" or "attempt to notify" shall not be acceptable. The cancellation notice notification period shall also be noted as **30 days**.

ARTICLE 5 HOLD HARMLESS AGREEMENT

The contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the housing authority and its employees from and against all claims for personal injury or property damage, including claims against the housing authority, its agents or servants, arising out of the Illinois Structural Work Act, and all losses and expenses, including attorney's fees that may be incurred by the housing authority defending such claims, arising out of or resulting from the performance of the work and caused in whole or in part by any negligent act or omission of the contractor, any subcontractor, any directly or indirectly employed by any of them or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, regardless of whether or not it is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. In any and all claims against the housing authority or any of its agents or servants by an employee of a contractor, any subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them or anyone for whose acts in any way by any limitation on the amount or type of damages, compensation or benefits payable by or for the contract or subcontractor under Workers Compensation Acts, Disability Acts, or their Employee Benefit Acts.

ARTICLE 6 PREVAILING WAGE RATE

The contractor shall be responsible for compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act including the prevailing wage rate requirements as applicable to the location where the work is performed; with copies of applicable Department of Labor Wage Rate Determination to be furnished by the Owner. Davis-Bacon Wage Decision is an attachment to this contract.

ARTICLE 7 PAYROLL SUBMISSION

The Contractor will submit a Weekly Payroll Report of forms provided by the owner. Reports will be submitted on Monday reflecting the work completed the previous week. All employees participating in the execution of this contract must be listed on the Weekly Payroll Report.

ARTICLE 8 TIME TO PERFORM

The work on this Contract is to commence by April 29th, 2020 and is to be completed within - 120 days, but no later than 4:00 p.m. Prevailing Time August 27th, 2020; or a construction delay penalty of 100.00 per day shall be deducted from the contract price unless the Owner agrees in writing to an extension of this deadline.

ARTICLE 9 MATERIALS

Contractor will furnish all materials and equipment required to perform this contract.

ARTICLE 10 CONTRACT SUM

Owner shall pay the Contractor for the performance of the work, subject to the additions and deductions by approved Change Order as provided in the Contract, in current funds, the Contract Sum of \$_____.

ARTICLE 11 MULTIPLE PROGRESS PAYMENT

Based upon the Application for Payment submitted to the Architect or the Owner's representative by the Contractor and Certificates for Payments issued by the Architect or Owner's Representative, the Owner shall make progress on account of the Contract Sum to the Contractor as provided in the Conditions of the Contract in accordance with General Conditions, HUD Form 5370, Section 6 and 27.

ARTICLE 12 FINAL PAYMENT

The final payment, consisting of the entire unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, shall be paid by the Owner to the Contractor after the contractor has completed and submitted the proper documentation to the Owner unless otherwise stipulated, provided the work has been completed, the contract fully performed, and a Final Certificate of Payment approved and issued by the Owner.

ARTICLE 13 AFFIDAVIT AND LIEN WAIVER SUBMISSION

The contractor will provide the Owner with an Affidavit attesting to the Fact that all labor and materials except those provided by owner will be supplied by the Contractor, and that there shall be no other subcontractor and/or material suppliers required to complete the work of the contract.

- A. The Contractor will provide a lien waiver in the amount of the payment requested.
- B. The Contractor will provide the Owner with Affidavits and Final Lien Waivers for all subcontractors and material suppliers involved in the completion of the work of the contract upon request for final payment.
- C. The Contractor shall deliver to the Owner a signed and notarized Contractor's Certificate of Release of all liens arising out of this contract prior to final payment.

ARTICLE 14 SAFETY/EEO

The Contractor agrees that all work will be performed in compliance with all applicable State and Federal laws related to Occupational Safety and Equal Employment Opportunity.

ARTICLE 15 NO INTEREST CLAUSE

No member, officer or employee of the housing authority during his/her tenure or for one (1) year thereafter shall have any interest direct or indirect in this contract or the proceeds thereof.

ARTICLE 16 WARRANTY

The Contractor agrees to Warranty the workmanship, materials and equipment of the Contract Work against any defect for a period of one (1) year from date of Final Payment in the form of a Good Faith Agreement and a Warranty Bond for One Hundred (100%) of the Contract Sum.

ARTICLE 17 PERMITS AND LICENSES

The Contractor agrees to be responsible for application, payment and obtaining all necessary permits and licenses required for the work specified in this contract and as amended by change order.

ARTICLE 18 PLANS AND SPECIFICATIONS

The Contractor is responsible for obtaining additional copies of plans and specifications at the contractor's expense.

ARTICLE 19 SECTION 3 REQUIREMENTS

The work to be performed under this contract is on a project assisted under a program providing direct Federal financial assistance from the Department of Housing and Urban Development and is subject to the requirements of Section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968, as amended, 12 U.S.C. 1701u, Section 3 requires that to the greatest extent feasible, opportunities for training and employment be given to lower income residents of the area of the Section 3 covered project, and contracts for work in connection with the project be awarded to business concerns which are located in, or owned in substantial part by persons residing in the area of the Section 3 covered project.

The parties to this contract will comply with the provisions of said Section 3 and the regulations issued pursuant thereto by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development set forth in 24 CFR Part 135, and all applicable rules and orders of the Department issued there under prior to the execution of this contract. The parties to this contract certify and agree that they are under no contractual or other disability that would prevent them from complying with these requirements.

The contractor will send to each labor organization or representative of workers with which he has a collective bargaining agreement or other contract or understanding, if any, a notice advising the said labor organization or worker's representative of his commitments under this Section 3 clause and shall post copies of the notice in conspicuous places available to employees and applicants for employments or training.

The contractor will include the Section 3 clause in every subcontract for work in connection with the project and will, at the direction of the applicant for or recipient of Federal Financial assistance, take appropriate action pursuant to the subcontract upon finding that the subcontractor is in violation of regulations issued by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, 24 CFR Part 135. The contractor will not subcontract with any subcontractor where it has notice or knowledge that the latter has been found in violation of regulations under 24 CFR part 135 and will not let any subcontract unless the subcontractor has first provided it with a preliminary statement of ability to comply with the requirements of these regulations. Compliance with the provisions of section 3, the regulations set forth in 24 CFR part 135, and all applicable rules and orders of the Department issued there under prior to the execution of the contract, shall be a condition of the Federal financial assistance provided to the project, binding upon the applicant or recipient, its contractors and subcontractors, its

successors, and assigns to those sanctions specified by the grant or loan agreement or contract through which Federal assistance is provided, and to such sanctions as are specified by 24 CFR part 135.

The contractor will certify that any vacant employment positions, including training position, that are filled (1) after the contractor is selected but before the contract is executed, and (2) with persons other than those to whom the regulations of 24 CFR part 135 require employment opportunities to be directed, were not filled to circumvent the contractor's obligations under 24 CFR part 135.

Noncompliance with HUD's regulations in 24 CFR part 135 may result in sanctions, termination of this contract for default, and debarment or suspension from future HUD assisted contracts.

Recipient (SCCHA)

Contractor

ARTICLE 20 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

Terms used in this Agreement that are defined in the conditions of the Contract shall have the meanings designated in those Conditions.

Minority Participation Goal: Pursuant to established St. Clair County Housing Authority Affirmative Action and Equal Opportunity Goals, the Contractor shall be advised that they must satisfy the requirement to utilize qualified minority businesses to perform subcontract work or supply materials and/or equipment for this project. The established goal for said participation shall be no less than 20% of the total contract price.

The Contract Documents, which constitute the entire agreement between the Owner and the Contractor, are listed in Article 1 and enumerated as follows:

1. Bid package
2. Instructions to Bidders HUD 5369
3. General Conditions HUD 5370
4. SCCHA Supplemental General Conditions
5. Wage Decision
6. Bid Form
7. Statement of Bidders HUD 5369A
8. Contract Documents
9. Affirmative Action & EEO Requirements
10. Certification of Payments HUD 50071
11. Disclosure of Lobbying Activities HUD SF-LLL
12. Section 3 Documents
13. Plans and Specifications
14. Working Drawings

AMP 4, 5 and 6, Belleville, Washington Park and New Athens, IL

THIS AGREEMENT EXECUTED ON THIS DATE:

OWNER:

St. Clair County Housing Authority
1790 South 74th Street
Belleville, IL 62223

CONTRACTOR:

BY: _____

Larry McLean
Executive Director

BY: _____

Contractor Signature

_____ Title

DATE: _____

DATE: _____

SECTION 7

CONTRACT MODIFICATION FORMS

ST. CLAIR COUNTY HOUSING AUTHORITY
CONSTRUCTION COST ESTIMATE
BREAKDOWN SUMMARY

form: ccebs3 12/97

CONTRACT MODIFICATION NO.:	CONTRACTOR:
DATE:	
PROJECT:	

I. CONTRACTOR WORK PERFORMANCE BREAKDOWN

NOTE: Construction Cost Estimate Breakdown Must Be Attached

	Additions	Deletions	Net Total
A. Material/Equipment Costs	\$ _____	- \$ _____	\$ _____
B. Labor Cost	\$ _____	- \$ _____	\$ _____
C. Other Direct Cost	\$ _____	- \$ _____	\$ _____
D. Total Direct Cost	\$ _____	- \$ _____	\$ _____
E. Overhead* 10% of D (add) 10% of D (Del)	\$ _____	- \$ _____	\$ _____
F. Subtotal (lines D + E)			= \$ _____
G. Profit 10% of F (Net Total)			= \$ _____
H. Total Unit Prices (Includes overhead and profit)			= \$ _____
I. Total (Net Total of Lines F + g + H)			\$ _____

*Overhead to be calculated individually for net totals of additions & deletions. Credit for Overhead of Deletions may or may not be included as negotiated with the Contracting Officer.

II. SUBCONTRACTOR'S SUMMARY OF DETAILED BREAKDOWN AND CONTRACTORS MARK-UP

*Note: Subcontractors direct cost below shall include 10% overhead.

Subcontractor	Additions	Deletions	Net Total
_____	\$ _____	- \$ _____	= \$ _____
_____	\$ _____	- \$ _____	= \$ _____
_____	\$ _____	- \$ _____	= \$ _____
_____	\$ _____	- \$ _____	= \$ _____

J.	Total Direct Cost	\$ _____
K. Contractors O & P 6% of line J = \$ _____	(minimum \$50.00)	
L. Profit of Subcontractor's 10% of line J = \$ _____		
M.	Total O & P (Lines K + L)	\$ _____
N. Total Subcontractor's Unit Prices (Includes Overhead and Profit)		\$ _____
O.	Total (lines J + M+ N)	\$ _____

III. PROPOSAL

The proposal (increases) (decreases) the contract amount by: TOTAL PRICE (Lines I + O) \$ _____

Firm Name _____

by

Date _____

Title

Note: Attached detailed breakdowns from Contractor and each subcontractor identifying direct cost, overhead and profit, separately

St. Clair County Housing Authority

Construction Cost Estimate Breakdown				Date:			
Contractor/Subcontractor:		Address:					
Contract for: (work to be performed)				Proposed Total Contract Price:			
Contract Modification Number:		Project:		Work Location:			
Line No.	Item	Unit of Measure	Quantity	Material Equipment Cost		Labor Cost	
				Unit	Total	Manhours	Rate	Total	Other Direct Cost	Line Total

SECTION 8

WAGE DECISION

"General Decision Number: IL20200007 02/14/2020

Superseded General Decision Number: IL20190007

State: Illinois

Construction Types: Building and Residential

Counties: Madison and St Clair Counties in Illinois.

BUILDING CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS (does not include residential construction consisting of single family homes and apartments up to and including 4 stories) & RESIDENTIAL CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS (consisting of single family homes and apartments up to and including 4 stories)

Note: Under Executive Order (EO) 13658, an hourly minimum wage of \$10.80 for calendar year 2020 applies to all contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act for which the contract is awarded (and any solicitation was issued) on or after January 1, 2015. If this contract is covered by the EO, the contractor must pay all workers in any classification listed on this wage determination at least \$10.80 per hour (or the applicable wage rate listed on this wage determination, if it is higher) for all hours spent performing on the contract in calendar year 2020. If this contract is covered by the EO and a classification considered necessary for performance of work on the contract does not appear on this wage determination, the contractor must pay workers in that classification at least the wage rate determined through the conformance process set forth in 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(ii) (or the EO minimum wage rate, if it is higher than the conformed wage rate). The EO minimum wage rate will be adjusted annually. Please note that this EO applies to the above-mentioned types of contracts entered into by the federal government that are subject to the Davis-Bacon Act itself, but it does not apply to contracts subject only to the Davis-Bacon Related Acts, including those set forth at 29 CFR 5.1(a)(2)-(60). Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the EO is available at www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts.

Modification Number	Publication Date
0	01/03/2020
1	01/10/2020
2	01/24/2020
3	02/14/2020

ASBE0001-003 10/02/2017

	Rates	Fringes
ASBESTOS WORKER/HEAT & FROST INSULATOR.....	\$ 38.70	23.17
----- BOIL0363-001 01/01/2017		

	Rates	Fringes
BOILERMAKER.....	\$ 36.50	29.89
----- BRIL0008-006 08/01/2017		

Rates	Fringes
-------	---------

Bricklayer, Caulker, Cleaner, Pointer & Stonemason (including Marble Mason, Tile Layer).....\$ 33.13	22.05
---	-------

CARP0500-002 05/01/2019

ST. CLAIR COUNTY

Rates	Fringes
-------	---------

CARPENTER (Lather, Piledriver, and Millwright) Building.....\$ 39.58 Residential.....\$ 30.00	17.77 17.77
Carpet Installer (Carpet, Linoleum, Hardwood, and Tile Layer).....\$ 34.21	17.69

CARP0664-002 05/01/2018

MADISON COUNTY

Rates	Fringes
-------	---------

CARPENTER (Lather, Piledriver, and Millwright) Building.....\$ 38.85 Residential.....\$ 29.50	17.10 17.10
Carpet Installer (Carpet, Linoleum, Hardwood, and Tile Layer).....\$ 33.43	17.02

ELEC0309-005 09/02/2019

MADISON (Remainder) and ST. CLAIR COUNTIES

Rates	Fringes
-------	---------

ELECTRICIAN Building.....\$ 41.83 Residential.....\$ 34.50	32.41%+7.99 51.90%
--	-----------------------

ELEC0309-014 09/01/2019

MADISON (Remainder) and
ST. CLAIR COUNTIES

Rates	Fringes
-------	---------

ELECTRICAL LOW VOLTAGE WIRING INSTALLER.....\$ 35.28	14.27
---	-------

Installation, service and maintenance of low-voltage systems which utilizes the transmission and/or transference of voice, sound, vision, or digital for commercial, education, security and entertainment purposes for the following: TV monitoring and surveillance, background/foreground music, intercom and telephone interconnect, field programming, inventory control systems, microwave transmission, multi-media, multiplex, radio page, school, intercom and sound burglar alarms and low voltage master clock systems.

ELEC0649-003 09/01/2019

MADISON COUNTY (Area West of a North-South line 1 mile East of the West boundaries of Edwardsville, Fort Russell & Moro Twp's and North of Hwy 66 West to Mississippi River)

	Rates	Fringes
ELECTRICAL LOW VOLTAGE WIRING INSTALLER		
Installation, service, and maintenance of low-voltage systems which utilizes the transmission and/or transference of voice, sound, vision, or digital for commercial, education, security and entertainment purposes for the following: TV monitoring and surveillance, background/foreground music, intercom and telephone interconnect, field programming, inventory control systems, microwave transmission, multi-media, multiplex, radio page, school, intercom and sound burglar alarms and low voltage master clock systems.....\$ 33.06	17.19	
ELECTRICIAN		
Building Construction.....\$ 42.01 Residential Construction (Up to and including a six family apartment building, but excluding multi-building apartment complexes or apartment buildings that have commercial stores or professional quarters in conjunction with commercial ventures such as nursing homes, motels, inc.).....\$ 23.28	22.38	
	10.84	

ELEV0003-003 01/01/2020

	Rates	Fringes
ELEVATOR MECHANIC.....\$ 51.73		34.765+a+b

FOOTNOTES:

- a) Employer contributes 8% of regular basic hourly rate as vacation pay credit for employees with more than 5 years of service, and 6% for less than 5 years of service
- b) Eight paid holidays: New Year's Day, Memorial Day,

Independence Day, Labor Day, Thanksgiving Day Friday after Thanksgiving Day, Veterans' Day and Christmas Day.

ENGI0520-003 08/01/2018

	Rates	Fringes
POWER EQUIPMENT OPERATOR		
Group 01.....	\$ 38.30	32.15
Group 02.....	\$ 37.17	32.15
Group 03.....	\$ 32.69	32.15
Group 04.....	\$ 32.75	32.15
Group 05.....	\$ 32.42	32.15
Group 06.....	\$ 40.85	32.15
Group 07.....	\$ 41.15	32.15
Group 08.....	\$ 41.43	32.15
Group 09.....	\$ 39.30	32.15
Group 10.....	\$ 40.30	32.15
Group 11.....	\$ 40.30	32.15
Group 12.....	\$ 41.30	32.15

POWER EQUIPMENT OPERATOR CLASSIFICATIONS

GROUP 1: Cranes, Draglines, Shovels, Skimmer Scoops, Clamshells or Derrick Boats, Pile Drivers, Crane-Type Backhoes, Asphalt Plant Operators, Concrete Plant Operators, Dredges, Asphalt Spreading Machines, Screws on Asphalt Spreading Machines, All Locomotives, Cable Ways or Tower Machines, Hoists, Hydraulic Backhoes, Ditching Machines, or Backfiller, Cherrypickers, overhead Cranes, Roller, Steam or Gas, Concrete Pavers, Excavator Concrete Breakers, Concrete Pumps, Bulk Cement Plants, Cement Pumps, DerrickType Drills, Boat Operators, Motor Graders or Pushcats, Scoops or Toumapulls, Bulldozers, Endloaders or Fork Lifts, Power Blade or Elevating Graders, Winch Cats, Boom or Winch Trucks or Boom Tractors, Pipe Wrapping or Painting Machines, Asphalt Plant Engineer, Journeyman Lubricating Engineer, Drills (other than derrick type), Mud Jacks, or Well Drilling Machines, Boring Machines or Track Jacks, Mixers, Conveyors (two), Air Compressors (two) Water Pumps, regardless of size (two), Welding Machines (two), Siphons or Jets (two), Winch Head or Apparatuses (two), Light Plants (two), Waterblasters (two), all Tractors, regardless of size (straight tractor only), Fireman on Stationary Boilers, Automatic Elevators, Form Grading Machines, Finishing Machines, Power Sub-Grader or Ribbon Machines, Longitudinal Floats, Distributor Operators on Trucks, Winch Heads or Apparatuses (one), Mobil Track air and heaters (two to five), Heavy Equipment Greaser, Relief Operator, Assistant Master Mechanic and Heavy Duty Mechanic, concrete saws of all types and sizes with their attachments, gobhoppers, excavators all sizes, the repair, greasing, and fueling of all diesel hammers, the operation, set-up and cleaning of bidwells, concrete placement booms, the alterations, repair of all barges, water blasters of all sizes and their clutches, mobile lifts, hydraulic jacks where used for hoisting, diesel or gas powered flashing signs used for traffic control, micro pavers, log skiders, iceolators used on and off of pipeline, condor cranes, drill rigs of all sizes, bow boats, survey boats, ross carriers, bob-cats and all their attachments, skid steer loaders and all their attachments, creter crane, direct drive electric motors the bolting and unbolting the

adjusting and shimming, (dewatering jobs, whirley crane, conveyor belts) etc., batch plants (all sizes), roto mills, conveyors systems of any size and any configuration, hydroseeders and strawblowers all sizes, operation, repair, service of all vibratory hammers, all power pacs and their controls regardless of location, curtains or brush burning machines, stump cutter machines, grout machines regardless of size, Nail launchers when mounted on a machine or self-propelled, con-cover machines, Goldhofer and similar S.P.M.T. (self-propelled modular transpmiers) heavy transport units and all Operators (except those listed below).

Group 2: Assistant Operators

GROUP 3: Air Compressor One; Water Pump regardless of size One; Welding Machine One; 1-Bag Mixer One; Conveyor One; Siphon or Jet; Light Plant One; Heater One; Immobile Track Air One

GROUP 4: Firemen on Whirlies and Asphalt Spreader Oiler; Heavy Equipment Oilers; Truck Cranes; Monigans; Large over 65 tons capacity; Concrete Plant OIlter and Black Top Plant Oiler

GROUP 5: Oilers

GROUP 6: Operators on equipment with Booms, including Jibs, 100 ft and over, but less than 150 ft

GROUP 7: Operators on equipment with Booms, including Jibs, 150 ft and over, but less than 200 ft

GROUP 8: Operators on equipment with Boomns, including Jibs, 200 ft and over; Tower Cranes, and Whirley Cranes

GROUP 9: Certified crane Operators, Below 17.5 tons, when requested by the Contractor or required by the Owner.

GROUP 10: Certified crane Operators 17.5 tons and above, when requested by the Contractor or required by the Owner.

GROUP 11: Master Mechanic

GROUP 12: Licensed Boat Pilot

IRON0392-004 08/01/2018

	Rates	Fringes
IRONWORKER.....	\$ 32.50	27.38

LAB00044-001 08/01/2017

MADISON COUNTY (Southwest)

	Rates	Fringes
LABORER		
Group 1.....	\$ 25.76	27.48
Group 2.....	\$ 26.26	27.48
Group 3.....	\$ 27.26	27.48

LABORER CLASSIFICATIONS:

GROUP 1 - General Laborer

GROUP 2 - Asbestos Abatement Worker and Hazardous Waste Worker; Lead Base Paint Worker

GROUP 3 - Dynamite Man

LAB00100-001 08/01/2017

ST CLAIR COUNTY (East St. Louis, Alcoa, Brooklyn, Cahokia, Caseyville, Centreville, Dupo, Fairmont City, French Village, Midway, Maplewood, National City)

	Rates	Fringes
--	-------	---------

LABORERS

Group 1.....	\$ 30.79	22.45
Group 2.....	\$ 31.29	22.45
Group 3.....	\$ 32.29	22.45

LABORER CLASSIFICATIONS:

GROUP 1 - General Laborer

GROUP 2 - Asbestos Abatement Worker and Hazardous Waste Worker; Lead Base Paint Worker, Hod Carrier

GROUP 3 - Dynamite Man

LAB00218-002 08/01/2017

MADISON COUNTY (Northwest)

	Rates	Fringes
--	-------	---------

LABORERS

Group 1.....	\$ 30.59	22.65
Group 2.....	\$ 31.09	22.65
Group 3.....	\$ 32.09	22.65

LABORER CLASSIFICATIONS:

GROUP 1 - General Laborer

GROUP 2 - Asbestos Abatement Worker and Hazardous Waste Worker; Lead Base Paint Worker

GROUP 3 - Dynamite Man

LAB00338-001 08/01/2017

MADISON COUNTY (Westside)

	Rates	Fringes
--	-------	---------

LABORERS

Group 1.....	\$ 30.13	23.11
Group 2.....	\$ 30.63	23.11

Group 3.....\$ 31.63	23.11
----------------------	-------

LABORER CLASSIFICATIONS:

GROUP 1 - General Laborer

GROUP 2 - Asbestos Abatement Worker and Hazardous Waste Worker; Lead Base Paint Worker

GROUP 3 - Dynamite Man

LABO0397-001 08/01/2017

MADISON COUNTY (Southeast)

Rates	Fringes
-------	---------

LABORERS

Group 1.....\$ 30.79	22.45
Group 2.....\$ 31.29	22.45
Group 3.....\$ 32.29	22.45

LABORER CLASSIFICATIONS:

GROUP 1 - General Laborer

GROUP 2 - Asbestos Abatement Worker and Hazardous Waste Worker; Lead Base Paint Worker

GROUP 3 - Dynamite Man

LABO0459-001 08/01/2017

ST. CLAIR COUNTY (South)

Rates	Fringes
-------	---------

LABORERS

Group 1.....\$ 28.63	24.61
Group 2.....\$ 29.13	24.61
Group 3.....\$ 30.13	24.61

LABORER CLASSIFICATIONS:

GROUP 1 - General Laborer

GROUP 2 - Asbestos Abatement Worker and Hazardous Waste Worker; Lead Base Paint Worker

GROUP 3 - Dynamite Man

LABO0670-002 08/01/2017

ST CLAIR COUNTY (Northeast)

Rates	Fringes
-------	---------

LABORERS

Group 1.....\$ 28.05	25.19
Group 2.....\$ 28.55	25.19
Group 3.....\$ 29.55	25.19

LABORER CLASSIFICATIONS:

GROUP 1 - General Laborer

GROUP 2 - Asbestos Abatement Worker and Hazardous Waste Worker; Lead Base Paint Worker

GROUP 3 - Dynamite Man

LABO0742-003 08/01/2017

ST. CLAIR COUNTY (Eastside)

	Rates	Fringes
--	-------	---------

LABORERS

Group 1.....	\$ 26.37	26.87
Group 2.....	\$ 26.87	26.87
Group 3.....	\$ 27.87	26.87

LABORER CLASSIFICATIONS:

GROUP 1 - General Laborer

GROUP 2 - Asbestos Abatement Worker and Hazardous Waste Worker; Lead Base Paint Worker

Group 3 - Dynamite Man

PAIN0058-005 05/01/2017

	Rates	Fringes
--	-------	---------

PAINTER

Building.....	\$ 31.25	17.12
Residential.....	\$ 29.95	17.12

Epoxy or Toxic-Lead-Based Paint Work-\$1.00 Premium

PAIN0513-003 11/01/2016

BOND, CALHOUN, CLINTON, GREENE, JACKSON, JERSEY, MACOUPIN (Southside), MADISON, MARION, MONROE, PERRY, RANDOLPH, ST. CLAIR, AND WASHINGTON COUNTIES

	Rates	Fringes
--	-------	---------

GLAZIER..... \$ 33.40 24.80

PLAS0090-003 08/01/2017

	Rates	Fringes
--	-------	---------

CEMENT MASON.....	\$ 33.90	24.25
PLASTERER.....	\$ 31.00	18.95
TERRAZZO WORKER/SETTER.....	\$ 17.55	0.00
TILE SETTER.....	\$ 11.70	1.605

PLUM0101-002 07/01/2019

ST. CLAIR COUNTY (BELLEVILLE, FAYETTEVILLE, FREESBURG, LEBANON, LENZBERG, MASCOUTAH, MARISSA, MILLSTADT, NEW ATHENS, SCOTT AFB, SHILOH, SMITHON, ST. LIBORY, SUMMERFIELD, and SWANSEE)

	Rates	Fringes
PLUMBER/PIPEFITTER.....	\$ 40.05	16.78

PLUM0360-002 07/01/2019

MADISON (GRANITE CITY & SOUTHERN HALF OF COUNTY) and ST. CLAIR (EAST ST. LOUIS & VIC.) COUNTIES

	Rates	Fringes
PLUMBER.....	\$ 39.95	16.85

PLUM0439-001 01/01/2019

MADISON (Grant City and Southern Half of County) and ST. CLAIR (East St. Louis and Vic) Counties

	Rates	Fringes
Steamfitter.....	\$ 40.25	19.14

* PLUM0553-002 01/01/2020

MADISON COUNTY (North of East - West which is one mile North of South line of Chouteau, Edwardsville, Oak, Marine, and Saline Townships)

	Rates	Fringes
PLUMBER/PIPEFITTER.....	\$ 43.96	15.60

FOOTNOTES:

A. 4 HOURS PAID FOR CHRISTMAS EVE IF HOLIDAY FALLS ON MONDAY THRU FRIDAY.

ROOF0002-004 03/01/2019

	Rates	Fringes
ROOFER.....	\$ 33.30	18.41

SFIL0268-001 01/01/2020

WITHIN A 30 MILE RADIUS OF ST. LOUIS, MO

	Rates	Fringes
Sprinkler Fitters.....	\$ 45.21	24.52

SFIL0669-001 04/01/2019

REMAINDER OF COUNTIES

	Rates	Fringes
SPRINKLER FITTER.....	\$ 41.87	22.93

SHEE0268-002 07/01/2017

	Rates	Fringes
Sheet Metal Worker		
Building.....	\$ 34.27	20.20
Residential.....	\$ 23.12	12.23

TEAM0050-003 05/01/2019

ST CLAIR COUNTY

	Rates	Fringes
TRUCK DRIVER		
Group 1.....	\$ 38.17	19.85
Group 2.....	\$ 38.71	19.85
Group 3.....	\$ 39.01	19.85
Group 4.....	\$ 39.34	19.85
Group 5.....	\$ 40.39	19.85

CLASSIFICATIONS:

GROUP 1: Drivers on 2 axles hauling less than 9 tons; air compressor & welding machines and brooms, including those pulled by separate units; Truck Driver Helper, warehouse employees; Mechanic Helpers; greasers and tiremen; pick-up trucks when hauling material, tools, or workers to and from and on the job site; and forklifts up to 6,000 lb capacity.

GROUP 2: 2 or 3 axles hauling more than 9 tons but hauling less than 16 tons; A-frame winch trucks; hydrolift trucks; Vactor Trucks or similar equipment when used for transportation purposes; Forklift over 6,000 lb.capacity; winch trucks; and four axle combination units.

GROUP 3: 2, 3 or 4 Axles hauling 16 tons or more; 5-Axles or more combination units; drivers on water pulls; articulated dump trucks; mechanics and working forepersons.

GROUP 4: Low Boy and Oil Distributors.

GROUP 5: Drivers who require special protective clothing while employed on hazardous waste work.

TEAM0525-002 05/01/2019

MADISON COUNTY

	Rates	Fringes
TRUCK DRIVER		
Group 1.....	\$ 38.17	19.85
Group 2.....	\$ 38.71	19.85
Group 3.....	\$ 39.01	19.85
Group 4.....	\$ 39.34	19.85
Group 5.....	\$ 40.39	19.85

CLASSIFICATIONS:

GROUP 1: Drivers on 2 axles hauling less than 9 tons; air compressor & welding machines and brooms, including those pulled by separate units; Truck Driver Helper, warehouse employees; Mechanic Helpers; greasers and tiremen; pick-up trucks when hauling material, tools, or workers to and from and on the job site; and forklifts up to 6,000 lb capacity.

GROUP 2: 2 or 3 axles hauling more than 9 tons but hauling less than 16 tons; A-frame winch trucks; hydrolift trucks; Vactor Trucks or similar equipment when used for transportation purposes; Forklift over 6,000 lb.capacity; winch trucks; and four axle combination units.

GROUP 3: 2, 3 or 4 Axles hauling 16 tons or more; 5-Axles or more combination units; drivers on water pulls; articulated dump trucks; mechanics and working forepersons.

GROUP 4: Low Boy and Oil Distributors.

GROUP 5: Drivers who require special protective clothing while employed on hazardous waste work.

WELDERS - Receive rate prescribed for craft performing operation to which welding is incidental.

Note: Executive Order (EO) 13706, Establishing Paid Sick Leave for Federal Contractors applies to all contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act for which the contract is awarded (and any solicitation was issued) on or after January 1, 2017. If this contract is covered by the EO, the contractor must provide employees with 1 hour of paid sick leave for every 30 hours they work, up to 56 hours of paid sick leave each year. Employees must be permitted to use paid sick leave for their own illness, injury or other health-related needs, including preventive care; to assist a family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is ill, injured, or has other health-related needs, including preventive care; or for reasons resulting from, or to assist a family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is a victim of, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking. Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the EO is available at www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts.

Unlisted classifications needed for work not included within the scope of the classifications listed may be added after award only as provided in the labor standards contract clauses (29CFR 5.5 (a) (1) (ii)).

The body of each wage determination lists the classification and wage rates that have been found to be prevailing for the cited type(s) of construction in the area covered by the wage determination. The classifications are listed in alphabetical order of ""identifiers"" that indicate whether the particular rate is a union rate (current union negotiated rate for local), a survey rate (weighted average rate) or a union average rate

(weighted union average rate).

Union Rate Identifiers

A four letter classification abbreviation identifier enclosed in dotted lines beginning with characters other than ""SU"" or ""UAVG"" denotes that the union classification and rate were prevailing for that classification in the survey. Example: PLUM0198-005 07/01/2014. PLUM is an abbreviation identifier of the union which prevailed in the survey for this classification, which in this example would be Plumbers. 0198 indicates the local union number or district council number where applicable, i.e., Plumbers Local 0198. The next number, 005 in the example, is an internal number used in processing the wage determination. 07/01/2014 is the effective date of the most current negotiated rate, which in this example is July 1, 2014.

Union prevailing wage rates are updated to reflect all rate changes in the collective bargaining agreement (CBA) governing this classification and rate.

Survey Rate Identifiers

Classifications listed under the ""SU"" identifier indicate that no one rate prevailed for this classification in the survey and the published rate is derived by computing a weighted average rate based on all the rates reported in the survey for that classification. As this weighted average rate includes all rates reported in the survey, it may include both union and non-union rates. Example: SULA2012-007 5/13/2014. SU indicates the rates are survey rates based on a weighted average calculation of rates and are not majority rates. LA indicates the State of Louisiana. 2012 is the year of survey on which these classifications and rates are based. The next number, 007 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 5/13/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

Survey wage rates are not updated and remain in effect until a new survey is conducted.

Union Average Rate Identifiers

Classification(s) listed under the UAVG identifier indicate that no single majority rate prevailed for those classifications; however, 100% of the data reported for the classifications was union data. EXAMPLE: UAVG-OH-0010 08/29/2014. UAVG indicates that the rate is a weighted union average rate. OH indicates the state. The next number, 0010 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 08/29/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

A UAVG rate will be updated once a year, usually in January of each year, to reflect a weighted average of the current negotiated/CBA rate of the union locals from which the rate is based.

1.) Has there been an initial decision in the matter? This can be:

- * an existing published wage determination
- * a survey underlying a wage determination
- * a Wage and Hour Division letter setting forth a position on a wage determination matter
- * a conformance (additional classification and rate) ruling

On survey related matters, initial contact, including requests for summaries of surveys, should be with the Wage and Hour Regional Office for the area in which the survey was conducted because those Regional Offices have responsibility for the Davis-Bacon survey program. If the response from this initial contact is not satisfactory, then the process described in 2.) and 3.) should be followed.

With regard to any other matter not yet ripe for the formal process described here, initial contact should be with the Branch of Construction Wage Determinations. Write to:

Branch of Construction Wage Determinations
Wage and Hour Division
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, DC 20210

2.) If the answer to the question in 1.) is yes, then an interested party (those affected by the action) can request review and reconsideration from the Wage and Hour Administrator (See 29 CFR Part 1.8 and 29 CFR Part 7). Write to:

Wage and Hour Administrator
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, DC 20210

The request should be accompanied by a full statement of the interested party's position and by any information (wage payment data, project description, area practice material, etc.) that the requestor considers relevant to the issue.

3.) If the decision of the Administrator is not favorable, an interested party may appeal directly to the Administrative Review Board (formerly the Wage Appeals Board). Write to:

Administrative Review Board
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, DC 20210

4.) All decisions by the Administrative Review Board are final.

=====

END OF GENERAL DECISION"

SECTION 9

PLA REQUIREMENTS

INSTRUCTION TO BIDDERS

Award of Contract

The general contract will be awarded to the lowest responsible and eligible general bidder complying with the conditions and requirements provided in these instructions, the bid forms and the other bid documents. A "responsible" bidder is a bidder demonstrably possessing the skill, ability and integrity necessary to faithfully perform the work called for by the contract, based upon a determination of competent workmanship and financial soundness. An "eligible" bidder is a bidder who is not debarred from bidding under any applicable law, and who shall certify that he is able to furnish labor that can work in harmony with all other elements of labor employed or to be employed on the project. In the interest of such harmony, the long-term supply of skilled manpower, and to provide a legally enforceable means of assuring labor stability and labor peace over the life of the project, each successful bidder and any and all levels of subcontractors, as a condition of being awarded a contract or subcontract, shall be required to enter into a Project labor Agreement for the project known as: **Boiler, HVAC and Water Heater Replacement, AMP 4, 5, and 6; Belleville, Washington Park and New Athens, IL**

located in (St. Clair County) with the Southwestern Illinois Building and Construction Trades Council, AFL-CIO, and its Signatory Affiliated Local Unions for the development and construction of the project, and will be bound by the provisions of that agreement in the same manner as any other provision of the contract.

**ST. CLAIR COUNTY HOUSING AUTHORITY
PROJECT LABOR AGREEMENT**

As adopted on November 10, 2004 by the
Southwestern Illinois Building & Construction Trades Council Board of Business Agents

This agreement is entered into this _____ day of _____, 2019, by and between _____ (Contractor) and the Southwestern Illinois Building Trades Council (SIBTC) for and on behalf of its affiliates which sign a "Union Letter of Assent" (Signatory Union Affiliates) for this Project Labor Agreement, hereinafter referred to as the "Union." This Agreement shall apply to work performed by the Employer and its Contractors and Subcontractors on new construction and/or capitalized rehabilitation work undertaken and paid for by the SCCHA, hereinafter referred to as the Owner.

ARTICLE I – INTENT AND PURPOSES

- 1.1 This Project Agreement shall apply and is limited to the recognized and accepted historical definition of new construction and/or capitalized rehabilitation work under the direction of and performed by the Contractor(s), of whatever tier, which may include the Project Contractor, who have contracts awarded for such work on the Project. Such work shall include site preparation work and dedicated off-site work.

The Project is defined as:

Remove and replace gas fired staged Boiler system, electric and gas residential furnaces with A-coils and condensing units (some condensing units will be elevated) and water heaters with all trims, wiring, piping and accessories.

- 1.2 It is agreed that the Project Contractor shall require all Contractors of whatever tier who have been awarded contracts for work covered by this Agreement, to accept and be bound by the terms and conditions of this Project Agreement by executing the Letter of Assent (Attachment A) prior to commencing work. The Project Contractor shall assure compliance with this Agreement by the Contractors. It is further agreed that the terms and conditions of this Project Agreement shall supersede and override terms and conditions of any and all other national, area, or local collective bargaining agreements, (including all vertical agreements), except for all work performed under the NTL Articles of Agreement, the National Stack/Chimney Agreement, the National Cooling Tower Agreement, and the National Agreement of the International Union of Elevator Constructors.
- 1.3 The Contractor agrees to be bound by the terms of the Collective Bargaining Agreements and amendments thereto of the Signatory Union Affiliates and the applicable employers association, if any, with the Signatory Union Affiliates with which it has a present bargaining relationship. If there has previously been bound to all such bargaining relationship, the contractor or subcontractor shall sign and be bound to all such agreements with Signatory Union Affiliates as outlined in the scope of work in the required pre-job conference. Such agreements are incorporated herein by reference. In order to comply with the requirements of the various fringe benefit funds to which the Contractor is to contribute, the Contractor shall sign such participation agreements as are necessary and will honor the fringe benefit collection procedures as required by the Collective Bargaining Agreement with Signatory Union Affiliate.

- 1.4 The Contractor and the Union agree that should the Collective Bargaining Agreement (CBA) of any Signatory Union Affiliate expire prior to the completion of this project, the expired contracts' terms will be maintained until a new CBA is ratified. The wages, and fringe benefits included in any new CBA will be effective on the effective date of the newly negotiated CBA unless wage and fringe benefit retroactivity is agreed upon by the bargaining parties.
- 1.5 Nothing contained herein shall be construed to prohibit, restrict or interfere with the performance of any other operation work, or function which may occur at the Project site or be associated with the development of the Project.
- 1.6 This Agreement shall only be binding on the signatory parties hereto and shall not apply to their parents, affiliates, subsidiaries, or Non-Signatory Union Affiliates.
- 1.7 The Owner and/or the Project Contractor have the absolute right to select any qualified bidder for the award of contracts on this Project without reference to the existence or nonexistence of any agreements between such bidder and any party to this Agreement; provided, however, only that such bidder is willing, ready and able to become a party to and comply with this Project Agreement, should it be designated the successful bidder.
- 1.8 Items specifically excluded from the scope of this Agreement include but are not limited to following: [list all items to be excluded].
- 1.9 The provisions of this Project Agreement shall not apply to the Owner and nothing contained herein shall be construed to prohibit or restrict Owner or its employees from performing work not covered by this Project Agreement on the Project site. As areas and systems of the Project are inspected and construction tested by the Project Contractor or Contractors and accepted by the Owner, the Project Agreement will not have further force or effect on such items or areas, except when the Project Contractor or Contractors are directed by the Owner to engage in capitalized improvements and warranty functions required by its contract with the Owner during the term of this Agreement.
- 1.10 It is understood that the Owner, at its sole option, may terminate, delay and/or suspend any or all portions of the Project at any time.
- 1.11 It is understood that the liability of any employer and the liability of a Signatory Union Affiliate and the SIBTC under this agreement shall be several and not joint. Provided that the SIBTC or a Signatory Union Affiliate comply with their own obligations under this Agreement, the SIBTC and non-breaching Signatory Union Affiliates will not be liable for a breach of this Agreement by a breaching Signatory Union Affiliate or any action taken by a Non-Signatory Union Affiliate. The Union agrees that this Agreement does not have the effect of creating any joint employer status between or among the Owner, Contractor(s) or any employer.
- 1.12 Each affiliate union of the SIBTC representing employees engaged in construction work covered by this Agreement shall be requested to sign the "Union Letter of Assent", in the form attached hereto; provided, that the failure of any affiliate union to sign such Union Letter of Assent prior to commencement of construction work shall not diminish the applicability of this Agreement to the SIBTC and the union affiliates which have signed a Union Letter of Assent. Affiliates unions that have signed the Union Letter of Assent will be referred

to as "Signatory Union Affiliates" and affiliate unions that have not signed the Union Letter of Assent will be referred to as "Non- Signatory Union Affiliates".

ARTICLE II-RECOGNITION

2.1 The Contractor recognizes the SIBTC and the Signatory Union Affiliates as the sole and exclusive bargaining representatives for its craft employees employed on the job site. Signatory Union Affiliates will have recognition on the project for their craft.

ARTICLE III-ADMINISTRATION OF AGREEMENT

3.1 In order to assure that all parties have a clear understanding of the Agreement, to promote harmony and address potential problems, a pre-job conference will be held with the Contractor, SIBTC Representatives and all signatory parties prior to the start of any work on the project.

3.2 Representatives of the Contractor and the Union shall meet as required but not less than once a month to review the operation of this Agreement. The representatives at this meeting shall be empowered to resolve any dispute over the application of the Agreement.

3.3 The Contractor shall make available in writing to the Union no less than one week prior to these meetings a job status report, planned activities for the next 30 day period, actual numbers of craft employees on the project and estimated numbers of employees by craft required for the next 30 day period. The purpose of this report is to allow time to address any potential jurisdictional problems and to ensure that no party signatory to the Agreement is hindering the continuous progress of the project through a lack of planning or shortage of manpower.

ARTICLE IV-HOURS OF WORK OVERTIME SHIFTS & HOLIDAYS

4.1 The standard work day shall be an established consecutive eight (8) hour period between the hours of 7:00 a.m. and 5:00 p.m. with one-half hour designated as unpaid period for lunch. The standard work week shall be five (5) consecutive days of work commencing on Monday. Starting time which is to be established at the pre-job conference will be applicable to all craft employees on the project. Should job conditions dictate a change in the established starting time and/or a staggered lunch period on certain work of the project or with individual crafts, the Contractor, Business Managers of the Signatory Union Affiliates involved and the SIBTC shall mutually agree to such changes. If work schedule change cannot be mutually agreed to between these parties, the hours fixed in the Agreement shall prevail.

4.2 All time before and after the established work day of eight (8) hours, Monday through Friday and all time Saturday shall be paid in accordance with each crafts current collective bargaining agreement. All time on Sunday and Holidays shall be paid for at a rate of double time.

a. Fringe benefit payments for all overtime work shall be paid in accordance with each Signatory Union Affiliate's current Collective Bargaining Agreement.

4.3 Shift work, if used, shall be as provided in the collective bargaining agreement of each affected Signatory Union Affiliate.

4.4 Recognized Holidays shall be as follows: New Year's Day, Memorial Day, Fourth of July, Labor Day, Veteran's Day (to be celebrated on November 11), Thanksgiving Day and Christmas Day. No work will be performed on Labor Day under any consideration, except in

an extreme emergency and then only after consent is given by the Business Manager of the Signatory Union Affiliates.

ARTICLES V- ABSENTEEISM

5.1 The Contractor and the Union agree that chronic and/or unexcused absenteeism is undesirable and must be controlled. Employees that develop a record of such absenteeism shall be identified by the Contractor to the appropriate referral facility and the Contractor shall support such action with the work record of the involved employee. Any employee terminated for such absenteeism shall not be eligible for rehire on the project for a period of no less than ninety (90) days.

ARTICLE VI- MANAGEMENT RIGHTS

6.1 The Contractor retains and shall exercise full and exclusive authority and responsibility for the management of its operations, except as expressly limited by the terms of this Agreement and the collective bargaining agreements of the Signatory Union Affiliates.

ARTICLE VII-GENERAL WORKING CONDITIONS

7.1 Employment begins and ends at the project site, to be determined at the Pre-Job Conference.

7.2 Employees shall be at their place of work at the starting time and shall remain at their place of work until quitting time. The parties reaffirm their policy of a fair day's work for a fair day's pay.

7.3 The Contractor may utilize brassing, or other systems to check employees in and out. Should such procedures be required, the techniques and rules regarding such procedures shall be established by mutual consent of the parties at the pre-job conference.

7.4 There shall be no limit on production by workmen or restrictions on the full use of tools or equipment. Craftsmen using tools shall perform any work of their trade and shall work under the direction of the craft foreman. There shall be no restrictions on efficient use of manpower other than as may be required by safety regulations.

7.5 Crew Foreman shall be utilized as per the existing collective bargaining agreements. The Contractor agrees to allow crew foremen ample time to direct and supervise their crew. The Union agrees there will be no restrictions placed on crew foreman's ability to handle tools and materials.

7.6 The Contractor may utilize the most efficient methods or techniques of construction, tools or other labor saving devices to accomplish the work. Practices not a part of the terms and conditions of this Agreement will not be recognized.

7.7 Should overtime work be required, the Contractor will have the right to assign specific employees and/or crews to perform such overtime work as is necessary to accomplish the work.

7.8 The Contractor may establish such reasonable project rules as the Contractor deems appropriate. These rules will be reviewed and established at the pre-job conference and posted at the project site by the Contractor.

7.9 It is recognized that specialized or unusual equipment may be installed on the project and in such cases, the Union recognizes the right of the Contractor to involve the equipment supplier or vendor's personnel in supervising the setting of the equipment, making modifications and final alignment which may be necessary prior to and during the start-up procedure, in order to protect factory warranties.

7.10 In order to promote a harmonious relationship between the equipment or vendor's personnel and the Building Trades craftsmen, a meeting shall be held between the Contractor and the Unions prior to any involvement on the project by these personnel. The Contractor will inform the Union of the nature of involvement by these personnel and the numbers of personnel to be involved, allowing ample time for the Union representatives to inform their stewards prior to the start of any work.

ARTICLE VIII-SAFETY

8.1 The employees covered the terms of this Agreement shall at all times while in the employ of the Contractor be bound by the safety rules and regulation as established by the Contractor in accordance with the Construction Safety Act and OSHA.

- a. These rules and regulations will be published and posted at conspicuous places throughout the project.

8.2 In accordance with the requirements of OSHA, it shall be the exclusive responsibility of each Contractor on a jobsite to which this Agreement applies, to assure safe working conditions for its employees and compliance by them with any safety rules contained herein or established by the Contractor. Nothing in this Agreement will make the SIBTC or any of its affiliates liable to any employee or to other persons in the event that injury or accident occurs.

ARTICLE IX- SUBCONTRACTING

9.1 The Project Contractor agrees that neither it nor any of its contractors or subcontractors will subcontract any work to be done on the Project except to a person, firm or corporation who is or agrees to become party to this Agreement. Any contractor or subcontractor working on the Project shall, as a condition to working on said Project, become signatory to and perform all work under the terms of this Agreement.

ARTICLE X- UNION REPRESENTATION

10.1 Authorized representatives of the SIBTC and its Signatory Union Affiliates shall have access to the project provided they do not interfere with the work of the employees and further provided that such representatives fully comply with the visitor and security rules established for the project.

10.2 Each Signatory Union Affiliate shall have the right to designate a working journeyman as a steward. Such designated steward shall be a qualified worker performing the work of that craft and shall not exercise any supervisory functions. Each steward shall be concerned with the employees of the steward's employer and not with the employees of any other employer.

10.3 The working steward will be paid at the applicable wage rate for the classification in which he is employed.

10.4 The working steward shall not be discriminated against because of his activities in performing his duties as steward, and except as otherwise provided in local agreements, shall be the last employee in his craft to be laid off in any reduction in force. Stewards will be subject to discharge to the same extent that other

employees are only after notification to the Union Representative. The Contractor will permit stewards sufficient time to perform the duties inherent to a steward's responsibilities. Stewards will be offered available overtime work if qualified.

ARTICLE XI- DISPUTES AND GRIEVANCES

11.1 This Agreement is intended to provide close cooperation between management and labor. Each of the Signatory Union Affiliates will assign a representative to this Project for the purpose of completing the construction of the Project economically, efficiently, continuously, and without interruptions, delays, or work stoppages.

11.2 The Contractors, Union, and the employees, collectively and individually, realize the importance to all parties to maintain continuous and uninterrupted performance of the work of the Project, and agree to resolve disputes in accordance with the grievance arbitration provisions set forth in this Article.

11.3 Any question or dispute arising out of and during the term of this Project Agreement (other than trade jurisdictional disputes) shall be considered a grievance and subject to resolution under the following procedures:

Step 1. (a) When any employee subject to the provisions of this Agreement feels he or she is aggrieved by a violation of this Agreement, he or she, through his or her local union business representative or job steward, shall, within five (5) working days after the occurrence of the violation, give notice to the work-site representative of the involved Contractor stating the provision(s) alleged to have been violated. The business representative of the local union or the job steward and the work-site representative of the involved Contractor and the Project Contractor shall meet and endeavor to adjust the matter within three (3) working days after timely notice has been given. The representative of the Contractor shall keep the meeting minutes and shall respond to the Union representative in writing (copying the Project Contractor) at the conclusion of the meeting but not later than twenty-four (24) hours thereafter. If they fail to resolve the matter within the prescribed period, the grieving party may, within forty-eight (48) hours thereafter, pursue Step 2 of the Grievance Procedure, provided the grievance is reduced to writing, setting forth the relevant information concerning the alleged grievance, including a short description thereof, the date on which the grievance occurred, and the provision(s) of the Agreement alleged to have been violated.

(b) Should the Local Union(s) or the Project Contractor or any Contractor have a dispute with the party and, if after conferring, a settlement is not reached within three (3) working days, the dispute may be reduced to writing and proceed to Step 2 in the same manner as outlined herein for the adjustment of an employee complaint.

Step 2. The International Union Representative and the involved Contractor shall meet within seven (7) working days of the referral of a dispute to this second step to arrive at a satisfactory settlement thereof. Meeting minutes shall be kept by the Contractor. If the parties fail to reach an agreement, the dispute may be appealed in writing in accordance with the provisions of Step 3 within seven (7) calendar days thereafter.

Step 3 (a) If the grievance has been submitted but not adjusted under Step 2, either party may request in writing, within seven (7) calendar days thereafter, that the grievance be submitted to an Arbitrator mutually agreed upon by them. The Contractor and the involved Union shall attempt mutually to select an arbitrator, but if they are unable to do so, they shall request the American Arbitration Association to provide them with a list of arbitrators from which the Arbitrator shall be selected. The rules of the American Arbitration Association shall govern the conduct of the arbitration hearing. The decision of the Arbitrator shall be formal and binding on all parties. The fee and expenses of such Arbitration shall be borne equally by the Contractor and the involved Local Union(s).

(b) Failure of the grieving party to adhere to the time limits established herein shall render the grievance null and void. The time limits established herein may be extended only by written consent of the parties involved at the particular step where the extension is agreed upon. The Arbitrator shall have the authority to make decisions only on issues presented to him or her, and he or she shall not have authority to change, amend, add to or retract from any of the provisions of this Agreement.

11.4 The Project Contractor and Owner shall be notified of all action at Steps 2 and 3 and shall, upon their request, be permitted to participate in all proceedings at these steps.

ARTICLE XII- JURISDICTIONAL DUTIES

12.1 The assignment of work will be solely the responsibility of the Contractor performing the work involved, in accordance with applicable Collective Bargaining Agreements and past practices. To the extent that past practice is a factor is assigning work under the Project Labor Agreement, including assignments under any collective bargaining agreements to which any of the signatory contractors hereto may be a party, the practice to be applied shall be that followed within the geographical area encompassed by the Southwestern Illinois Building and Construction Trades Council. The practice followed in any other geographical area, even though a Union signatory to this Project Labor Agreement may also represent employees in that area, shall not be a factor in the assignment. All jurisdictional disputes between or among Building and Construction Trades Unions and employee and the Contractor, parties to this Agreement, shall be settled and adjusted according to the present Plan established by the Building and Construction Trades Department or any other plan or method of procedure that may be adopted in the future by the Building and Construction Trades Department. Decisions rendered shall be final, binding and conclusive on the Contractor and Union parties to this Agreement.

12.2 All jurisdictional disputes shall be resolved without the occurrence of any strike, work stoppage, or slow-down of any nature and the Contractor's assignment shall be adhered to until the dispute is resolved. Individuals violating this section shall be subject to immediate discharge.

12.3 Each Contractor will conduct a pre-job conference with the appropriate Building and Construction Trades Council prior to commencing work. The Project Contractor and the Owner will be advised in advance of all such conferences and may participate if they wish.

ARTICLE XIII- WORK STOPPAGES AND LOCKOUTS

13.1 During the term of this Agreement there shall be no strikes, picketing, work stoppages, slowdowns or other disruptive activity for any reason by the SIBTC, its Signatory Union Affiliates or by any employee and there shall be no lockout by the Contractor. Failure of any Signatory Union Affiliate or employee to cross any picket line established at the project site is a violation of this Article.

13.2 The SIBTC and its Signatory Union Affiliates shall not sanction, aid or abet, encourage or continue any work stoppage, picketing or other disruptive activity and will not make any attempt of any kind to dissuade others from making deliveries to or performing services for or otherwise doing business with the Contractor at the project site. Should any of these prohibited activities occur the SIBTC and the Signatory Union Affiliates will take the necessary action to end such prohibited activities.

13.3 No employee shall engage in any activities which violate this Article. Any employee who participates in or encourages any activities which interfere with the normal operation of the project shall be subject to disciplinary action, including discharge, and if justifiably discharged for the above reasons, shall not be eligible for rehire on the same project for a period of not less than ninety (90) days.

13.4 Neither the SIBTC nor its Signatory Union Affiliates will be liable for acts of employees for whom it has no responsibility. The principal officer or officers of the SIBTC will immediately instruct order and

use the best efforts of his office to cause Signatory Union Affiliates to cease any violations of this Article. The SIBTC in its compliance with this obligation shall not be liable for unauthorized acts of Signatory Union Affiliate or Non-Signatory Union Affiliates. The principal officer or officers of any involved Signatory Union Affiliate will immediately instruct, order or use the best effort of his office to cause the employees the union represents to cease any violations of this Article. A union complying with this obligation shall not be liable for unauthorized acts of employees it represents. The failure of the Contractor to exercise its right in any instance shall not be deemed a waiver of its right in any instance.

13.5 In lieu of any action at law or equity, any party shall institute the following procedure when a breach of this Article is alleged; after all involved parties have been notified of the fact.

- a. The party invoking this procedure shall notify _____ whom the parties agree shall be the permanent arbitrator under this procedure. In the event the permanent arbitrator is unavailable at any time, he shall appoint his alternate. Notice to the arbitrator shall be by the most expeditious means available, with notice by telegram or any effective written means to the party alleged to be in violation and all involved parties.
- b. Upon receipt of said notice the arbitrator named above shall set and hold a hearing within twenty-four (24) hours if it is contended the violation still exists but not before twenty-four (24) hours after the telegraph notice to all parties involved as required above.
- c. The Arbitrator shall notify the parties by telegram or any other effective written means, of the place and time he has chosen for this hearing. Said hearing shall be completed in one session. A failure of any party or parties to attend said hearing shall not delay the hearing of evidence or issuance of an Award by the Arbitrator.
- d. The sole issue at the hearing shall be whether or not a violation of this Article has in fact occurred. The Award shall be issued in writing within three (3) hours after the close of the hearing, and may be issued without an Opinion. If any party desires an Opinion, one shall be issued within fifteen (15) days, but its issuance shall not delay compliance with, or enforcement of, the Award. The Arbitrator may order cessation of the violation of this Article, and such Award shall be served on all parties by hand or registered mail upon issuance.
- e. Such Award may be enforced by any court of competent jurisdiction upon the filing of the Agreement and all other relevant documents referred to herein above in the following manner. Telegraphic notice of the filing of such enforcement proceedings shall be given to the other party. In the proceeding to obtain a temporary order enforcing the Arbitrator's Award as issued under Section 13.5 of this Article, all parties waive the right to a hearing and agree that such proceedings may be ex parte. Such agreement does not waive any party's right to participate in a hearing for a final order of enforcement. The Court's order or orders enforcing the Arbitrator's Award shall be served on all parties by hand or by delivery to their last known address or by registered mail.

- f. Any rights created by statute or law governing arbitration proceedings inconsistent with the above procedure or which interfere with compliance therewith are hereby waived by parties to whom they accrue.
- g. The fees and expenses of the Arbitrator shall be borne by the party or parties found in violation, or in the event no violation is found, such fees and expenses shall be borne by the moving party.
- h. If the Arbitrator determines in accordance with Section 13.5 that the SIBTC or a Signatory Union Affiliate has violated Article XIII, the SIBTC or the Signatory Union Affiliate shall, within eight (8) hours of receipt of this Award, direct all employees they represent at the project to immediately return to work. If the employees do not return to work at the beginning of the next regularly scheduled shift following receipt of the Arbitrator's Award, and the SIBTC or Signatory Union Affiliate have not complied with Section 13.4 above, then the SIBTC or the Signatory Union Affiliate which has not complied with Section 13.4 shall pay the sum of ten thousand dollars (\$10,000) as liquidated damages to the affected owner, and shall pay an additional ten thousand dollars (\$10,000) per shift for each shift thereafter on which the employees have not returned to work. The Arbitrator shall retain jurisdiction to determine compliance with this Section and Section 13.4, and to assess liquidated damages.

ARTICLE XIV- GENERAL SAVINGS CLAUSE

14.1 If any Article or provision of this Agreement shall be declared invalid, inoperative or unenforceable by operation of law or by any of the above mentioned tribunals of competent jurisdiction, the remainder of this Agreement or the application of such Article or provision to persons or circumstances other than those as to which it has been held invalid, inoperative or unenforceable shall not be affected thereby.

ARTICLE XV- TERM OF AGREEMENT

15.1 This Agreement shall be in full force as of and from the date of the Notice of Award to the Final Acceptance of all applicable contractors.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the respective duly authorized representatives of the parties hereto have executed this Agreement on the date set forth opposite their respective signatures.

Date: _____

(Contractor Representative)

(Firm's Name)

(Firm's Address)

(Phone Number)

Date: _____

Charles "Totsie" Bailey, Exec. Sec.-Treas.
Southwestern Illinois Building &
Construction Trades Council
24 Meadow Heights Professional Park
Collinsville, IL 62234

ATTACHMENT A (CONTRACTOR LETTER OF ASSENT)

Note: All contractors of whatever tier (except those construction contractors who have directly signed the Agreement) shall execute the following Letter of Assent prior to commencing work:

CONTRACTOR LETTERHEAD

DATE

To: (Name of Owner)
(Address of Owner)

RE: _____ Construction Project Agreement

Dear Sir:

Pursuant to Article I, Section 1.2, of the above reference Agreement, the undersigned contractor hereby agrees that it will be bound by and comply with all terms and conditions said Project Labor Agreement, and any amendments thereto.

This Letter of Assent will remain in effect for the duration of the Agreement, and any extensions, after which this understanding will automatically terminate, except as provided for in Article I, Section 1.9, of the Agreement.

Sincerely,

(Name of Contractor or Subcontractor)

By: _____

Title: _____

**THE FOLLOWING DOCUMENTS
ARE TO BE RETURNED WITH CONTRACTORS BID**

SECTION 10

NON-COLLUSIVE AFFIDAVIT

NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT

STATE OF ILLINOIS)
 ss
COUNTY OF ST. CLAIR)

____ BEING FIRST DULY SWORN, DEPOSES AND
SAYS:

THAT HE/SHE IS (a partner or officer of _____)

) said firm, the party making the foregoing proposal or bid that such proposal is genuine and not collusive or sham; that said bidder has not colluded, conspired, connived, or agrees, directly or indirectly, with any bidder or person, to put in a sham bid or to refrain from bidding, and he/she is not nor in any manner, directly or indirectly, sought by agreement or collusion, or commitment or conference with any person, to fix the bid or affidavit or of any other bidder, or to fix any overhead, profit or cost element of said bidder, or of any other bidder, or to secure any other advantage against the St. Clair County Housing Authority or any person interested in the proposed contract, and that all statements in said proposal or bid are true.

Signature of Bidder-if bidder is an individual

Signature of Partner-if bidder is a partnership

Signature of Officer-if bidder is a corporation

Subscribed and sworn to before me this _____ day of _____, 20 _____.

Notary Public

My Commission Expires _____
Month _____ Day _____ Year _____

SEAL

THIS FORM MUST BE SUBMITTED WITH ALL BIDS

SECTION 11

CERTIFICATION OF PAYMENTS TO INFLUENCE FEDERAL TRANSACTIONS HUD 50071

Certification of Payments to Influence Federal Transactions

U.S. Department of Housing
and Urban Development
Office of Public and Indian Housing

OMB Approval No. 2577-0157 (Exp. 03/31/2020)

Applicant Name

Program/Activity Receiving Federal Grant Funding

The undersigned certifies, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

(1) No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of an agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(2) If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of an agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying, in accordance with its instructions.

(3) The undersigned shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all subawards at all tiers (including subcontracts, subgrants, and contracts under grants, loans, and cooperative agreements) and that all sub recipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by Section 1352, Title 31, U.S. Code. Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$10,000 and not more than \$100,000 for each such failure.

I hereby certify that all the information stated herein, as well as any information provided in the accompaniment herewith, is true and accurate.
Warning: HUD will prosecute false claims and statements. Conviction may result in criminal and/or civil penalties. (18 U.S.C. 1001, 1010, 1012; 31 U.S.C. 3729, 3802)

Name of Authorized Official

Title

Signature

Date (mm/dd/yyyy)

SECTION 12

DISCLOSURE OF LOBBYING ACTIVITIES HUD SF-LLL

DISCLOSURE OF LOBBYING ACTIVITIES

Complete this form to disclose lobbying activities pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1352

Approved by OMB
0348-0046

INSTRUCTIONS FOR COMPLETION OF SF-LLL, DISCLOSURE OF LOBBYING ACTIVITIES

This disclosure form shall be completed by the reporting entity, whether subawardee or prime Federal recipient, at the initiation or receipt of a covered Federal action, or a material change to a previous filing, pursuant to title 31 U.S.C. section 1352. The filing of a form is required for each payment or agreement to make payment to any lobbying entity for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with a covered Federal action. Use the SF-LLLA Continuation Sheet for additional information if the space on the form is inadequate. Complete all items that apply for both the initial filing and material change report. Refer to the implementing guidance published by the Office of Management and Budget for additional information.

1. Identify the type of covered Federal action for which lobbying activity is and/or has been secured to influence the outcome of a covered Federal action.
2. Identify the status of the covered Federal action.
3. Identify the appropriate classification of this report. If this is a followup report caused by a material change to the information previously reported, enter the year and quarter in which the change occurred. Enter the date of the last previously submitted report by this reporting entity for this covered Federal action.
4. Enter the full name, address, city, State and zip code of the reporting entity. Include Congressional District, if known. Check the appropriate classification of the reporting entity that designates if it is, or expects to be, a prime or subaward recipient. Identify the tier of the subawardee, e.g., the first subawardee of the prime is the 1st tier. Subawards include but are not limited to subcontracts, subgrants and contract awards under grants.
5. If the organization filing the report in item 4 checks "Subawardee," then enter the full name, address, city, State and zip code of the prime Federal recipient. Include Congressional District, if known.
6. Enter the name of the Federal agency making the award or loan commitment. Include at least one organizational level below agency name, if known. For example, Department of Transportation, United States Coast Guard.
7. Enter the Federal program name or description for the covered Federal action (item 1). If known, enter the full Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA) number for grants, cooperative agreements, loans, and loan commitments.
8. Enter the most appropriate Federal identifying number available for the Federal action identified in item 1 (e.g., Request for Proposal (RFP) number; Invitation for Bid (IFB) number; grant announcement number; the contract, grant, or loan award number; the application/proposal control number assigned by the Federal agency). Include prefixes, e.g., "RFP-DE-90-001."
9. For a covered Federal action where there has been an award or loan commitment by the Federal agency, enter the Federal amount of the award/loan commitment for the prime entity identified in item 4 or 5.
10. (a) Enter the full name, address, city, State and zip code of the lobbying entity engaged by the reporting entity identified in item 4 to influence the covered Federal action.
(b) Enter the full names of the individual(s) performing services, and include full address if different from 10 (a). Enter Last Name, First Name, and Middle Initial (MI).
11. Enter the amount of compensation paid or reasonably expected to be paid by the reporting entity (item 4) to the lobbying entity (item 10). Indicate whether the payment has been made (actual) or will be made (planned). Check all boxes that apply. If this is a material change report, enter the cumulative amount of payment made or planned to be made.
12. Check the appropriate box(es). Check all boxes that apply. If payment is made through an in-kind contribution, specify the nature and value of the in-kind payment.
13. Check the appropriate box(es). Check all boxes that apply. If other, specify nature.
14. Provide a specific and detailed description of the services that the lobbyist has performed, or will be expected to perform, and the date(s) of any services rendered. Include all preparatory and related activity, not just time spent in actual contact with Federal officials. Identify the Federal official(s) or employee(s) contacted or the officer(s), employee(s), or Member(s) of Congress that were contacted.
15. Check whether or not a SF-LLLA Continuation Sheet(s) is attached.
16. The certifying official shall sign and date the form, print his/her name, title, and telephone number.

According to the Paperwork Reduction Act, as amended, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB Control Number. The valid OMB control number for this information collection is OMB No. 0348-0046. Public reporting burden for this collection of information is estimated to average 30 minutes per response, including time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed, and completing and reviewing the collection of information. Send comments regarding the burden estimate or any other aspect of this collection of information, including suggestions for reducing this burden, to the Office of Management and Budget, Paperwork Reduction Project (0348-0046), Washington, DC 20503.

SECTION 13

BID FORM

BID FOR

Boiler, HVAC and Water Heater Replacements
AMPs 4, 5 and 6
Belleville, Washington Park and New Athens, Illinois
IFB-20-B0001

BID FORM

To: St. Clair County Housing Authority
1790 South 74th Street
Belleville, IL 62223

The undersigned, having familiarized (himself) (themselves) with the local conditions affecting the cost of the work, and with the Drawings and Specifications (including but not limited to Invitation for Bids, Instructions to Bidders, Representations, Certifications, and other Statements of Bidders, Supplement to the Instructions to Bidders, this Bid, the form of Bid Bond, the form of Non-Collusive Affidavit, the form of Contract, the form of Performance and Payment Bond or Bonds, the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, the Special Conditions, the General Requirements, and the Technical Specifications) and Addenda, if any thereto, as prepared by Hurst-Rosche, Inc. and on file in the offices of the Housing Authority and the Architect/Engineer hereby proposes to furnish all labor, materials, equipment and services required to complete Boiler, HVAC and Water Heater Replacements, St. Clair County Housing Authority, St. Clair County, Illinois, all in accordance therewith. The work is generally described as:

BASE BID:

1. All work as indicated on the Drawings and Specifications at **AMP 4: Belleville** as indicated on the Drawings and Specifications:

AMP 4 BID: _____ DOLLARS (\$ _____).

2. All work as indicated on the Drawings and Specifications at **AMP 5: Washington Park** as indicated on the Drawings and Specifications:

AMP 5 BID: _____ DOLLARS (\$ _____).

3. All work as indicated on the Drawings and Specifications at **AMP 6: New Athens** as indicated on Drawings and Specifications:

AMP 6 BID: _____ DOLLARS (\$ _____).

COMBINED LUMP SUM BASE BID: (INCLUDES ALL WORK LISTED ABOVE):

(The lump sum base bid shall determine low bidder)

LUMP SUM BASE BID: _____ DOLLARS (\$ _____).

Section 3 Business Concern:

1. The bidder represents and certifies that it [] is, [] is not a Section 3 Business Concern seeking preference in contracting.
 - a. Businesses seeking Section 3 status and preference in contracting will be required to complete and submit a Section 3 Business Certification Form and supporting documentation prior to award.

Bidder's Initials

1. The undersigned has read and understands the specifications, drawings, and General Conditions, agrees to perform all work in strict accordance with the contract documents for the price submitted, and has visited the job site, and understands the existing conditions.
2. The undersigned agrees that this proposal shall remain valid and may not be withdrawn for a period of sixty (60) consecutive calendar days after the scheduled closing time for receiving proposals.
3. The undersigned further understands that the Owner reserves the right to reject any and all bids and to waive any informality in the bidding. It is the intent of the Owner to award all bid items to one Contractor. However, all bid items may be considered and the amount of work adjusted according to Owner's budget.
4. The undersigned will comply with the Davis Bacon Wage Rate and minority participation requirements.
5. The Contractor to whom this work is awarded shall coordinate his/her work with other contractors at the site, if required.
6. The undersigned acknowledges receipt of the following addenda:
No. _____, dated _____ No. _____, dated _____
7. The undersigned agrees that, upon receipt of the Notice of Award of the contract to him/her, he/she shall execute a contract for this work and present same to the Owner within ten (10) days thereafter together with a performance bond/labor and material bond and Certificate of Insurance satisfactory to, and in the form prescribed by, the Owner, guaranteeing the faithful performance of the work in accordance with the terms of the contract.
8. Security in the sum of _____ Dollars (\$_____) in the form of _____ is submitted herewith in accordance with the Specifications.
9. Attached hereto is an affidavit in proof that the undersigned has not entered into any collusion with any person in respect to this bid or any other bid or submitting of bids for the contract for which this bid is submitted.
10. If awarded the contract for work on the project, Bidder agrees to perform all of the work, including punch list items in accordance with the date stipulated on the Notice to Proceed.

Date _____, 20_____.
(Large 'NOTICE' watermark is overlaid across the page)

Name of Bidder: _____
(Insert, "Corporation", "a Partnership", or "an Individual", as applicable)

By: _____

Print Name: _____

Title: _____

Official Address: _____

Phone: _____ Mobile Phone: _____

(SEALED – If Bid by Corporation) (State of Incorporation _____)

SECTION 14

AFFIRMATIVE ACTION AND EEO REQUIREMENTS

AFFIRMATIVE ACTION & EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY REQUIREMENTS CONTRACTOR'S AGREEMENT

"During the performance of this Contract, the Contractor agrees as Follows:"

"(1) The Contractor will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, creed, color or national origin. The Contractor will take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment without regard to their race, creed, color or national origin. Such action shall include, but not be limited to the following: employment upgrading, demotion, or transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. The Contractor agrees to post in conspicuous places, available to employees and applicants for employment, notices to be provided by the Contracting Office setting forth the Provisions of this nondiscrimination clause."

"(2) The Contractor will, in all solicitations or advertisements for advertisements for employees placed by or on behalf of the Contractor, state that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to race, creed, color or national origin."

"(3) The Contractor will send to each other labor union or representative of workers with which he has a collective bargaining agreement or other contract or understanding, a notice, to be provided by the agency Contracting Officer, advising the labor union or workers' representative of the Contractor's commitments under Section 202 of Executive Order No. 11246 of September 24, 1965, and shall post copies of the notice in conspicuous places available to employees and applicants for employment."

"(4) The Contractor shall comply with all provisions of Executive Order No. 11246 of September 24, 1965, and of the rules, regulations, and relevant orders of the Secretary of Labor."

"(5) The Contractor will furnish all information and reports required by Executive Order No. 11246 of September 24, 1965, and by the rules, regulations, and orders of the Secretary of Labor, or pursuant thereto, and will permit access to his books, records and accounts by the contracting agency and the Secretary of Labor for purposes of investigation to ascertain compliance with such rules, regulations and orders."

"(6) In the event of the Contractor's noncompliance with the nondiscrimination clauses of this contact or with any of such rules, regulations or orders, this contract may be cancelled, terminated, or suspended in whole or in part and the Contractor may be and the Contractor may be declared ineligible for further Government contracts in accordance with procedures authorized to Executive Order No. 11246 of September 24, 1965 or by rule, regulation, or order of the Secretary of Labor, or as otherwise provided by."

"(7) The Contractor will include the provisions of Paragraphs (1) through (7) in every subcontract or purchase order unless exempt by rules, regulations, or orders of the Secretary of Labor, issued pursuant to Section 204 of the Executive Order No. 11246 of September 24, 1965, so that such provisions will be binding upon each subcontractor or vendor. The Contractor will take such action with respect to any subcontractor or purchase order as the contracting agency may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions for noncompliance; provided, however, that in the event the Contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with litigation with a subcontractor or vendor as a result of such direction by the contracting agency, the Contractor may request the United States to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the United States."

NAME OF CONTRACTOR: _____

SIGNATURE: _____

DATE: _____

THIS FORM MUST BE SUBMITTED WITH ALL BIDS

SECTION 15

STATEMENT OF BIDDERS HUD 5369A

**U.S. Department of Housing
and Urban Development**
Office of Public and Indian Housing

**Representations, Certifications,
and Other Statements of Bidders**
Public and Indian Housing Programs

Representations, Certifications, and Other Statements of Bidders

Public and Indian Housing Programs

Table of Contents

Clause	Page
1. Certificate of Independent Price Determination	1
2. Contingent Fee Representation and Agreement	1
3. Certification and Disclosure Regarding Payments to Influence Certain Federal Transactions	1
4. Organizational Conflicts of Interest Certification	2
5. Bidder's Certification of Eligibility	2
6. Minimum Bid Acceptance Period	2
7. Small, Minority, Women-Owned Business Concern Representation	2
8. Indian-Owned Economic Enterprise and Indian Organization Representation	2
9. Certification of Eligibility Under the Davis-Bacon Act	3
10. Certification of Nonsegregated Facilities	3
11. Clean Air and Water Certification	3
12. Previous Participation Certificate	3
13. Bidder's Signature	3

1. Certificate of Independent Price Determination

(a) The bidder certifies that-

(1) The prices in this bid have been arrived at independently, without, for the purpose of restricting competition, any consultation, communication, or agreement with any other bidder or competitor relating to (i) those prices, (ii) the intention to submit a bid, or (iii) the methods or factors used to calculate the prices offered;

(2) The prices in this bid have not been and will not be knowingly disclosed by the bidder, directly or indirectly, to any other bidder or competitor before bid opening (in the case of a sealed bid solicitation) or contract award (in the case of a competitive proposal solicitation) unless otherwise required by law; and

(3) No attempt has been made or will be made by the bidder to induce any other concern to submit or not to submit a bid for the purpose of restricting competition.

(b) Each signature on the bid is considered to be a certification by the signatory that the signatory-

(1) Is the person in the bidder's organization responsible for determining the prices being offered in this bid or proposal, and that the signatory has not participated and will not participate in any action contrary to subparagraphs (a)(1) through (a)(3) above; or

(2) (i) Has been authorized, in writing, to act as agent for the following principals in certifying that those principals have not participated, and will not participate in any action contrary to subparagraphs (a)(1) through (a)(3) above.

[insert full name of person(s) in the bidder's organization responsible for determining the prices offered in this bid or proposal, and the title of his or her position in the bidder's organization];

(ii) As an authorized agent, does certify that the principals named in subdivision (b)(2)(i) above have not participated, and will not participate, in any action contrary to subparagraphs (a)(1) through (a)(3) above; and

(iii) As an agent, has not personally participated, and will not participate in any action contrary to subparagraphs (a)(1) through (a)(3) above.

(c) If the bidder deletes or modifies subparagraph (a)2 above, the bidder must furnish with its bid a signed statement setting forth in detail the circumstances of the disclosure.

[] [Contracting Officer check if following paragraph is applicable]
(d) Non-collusive affidavit. (applicable to contracts for construction and equipment exceeding \$50,000)

(1) Each bidder shall execute, in the form provided by the PHA/IHA, an affidavit to the effect that he/she has not colluded with any other person, firm or corporation in regard to any bid submitted in response to this solicitation. If the successful bidder did not submit the affidavit with his/her bid, he/she must submit it within three (3) working days of bid opening. Failure to submit the affidavit by that date may render the bid nonresponsive. No contract award will be made without a properly executed affidavit.

(2) A fully executed "Non-collusive Affidavit" [] is, [] is not included with the bid.

2. Contingent Fee Representation and Agreement

(a) Definitions. As used in this provision:

"Bona fide employee" means a person, employed by a bidder and subject to the bidder's supervision and control as to time, place, and manner of performance, who neither exerts, nor proposes to exert improper influence to solicit or obtain contracts nor holds out as being able to obtain any contract(s) through improper influence.

"Improper influence" means any influence that induces or tends to induce a PHA/IHA employee or officer to give consideration or to act regarding a PHA/IHA contract on any basis other than the merits of the matter.

(b) The bidder represents and certifies as part of its bid that, except for full-time bona fide employees working solely for the bidder, the bidder:

(1) [] has, [] has not employed or retained any person or company to solicit or obtain this contract; and

(2) [] has, [] has not paid or agreed to pay to any person or company employed or retained to solicit or obtain this contract any commission, percentage, brokerage, or other fee contingent upon or resulting from the award of this contract.

(c) If the answer to either (a)(1) or (a)(2) above is affirmative, the bidder shall make an immediate and full written disclosure to the PHA/IHA Contracting Officer.

(d) Any misrepresentation by the bidder shall give the PHA/IHA the right to (1) terminate the contract; (2) at its discretion, deduct from contract payments the amount of any commission, percentage, brokerage, or other contingent fee; or (3) take other remedy pursuant to the contract.

3. Certification and Disclosure Regarding Payments to Influence Certain Federal Transactions (applicable to contracts exceeding \$100,000)

(a) The definitions and prohibitions contained in Section 1352 of title 31, United States Code, are hereby incorporated by reference in paragraph (b) of this certification.

(b) The bidder, by signing its bid, hereby certifies to the best of his or her knowledge and belief as of December 23, 1989 that:

(1) No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress on his or her behalf in connection with the awarding of a contract resulting from this solicitation;

(2) If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds (including profit or fee received under a covered Federal transaction) have been paid, or will be paid, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress on his or her behalf in connection with this solicitation, the bidder shall complete and submit, with its bid, OMB standard form LLL, "Disclosure of Lobbying Activities;" and

(3) He or she will include the language of this certification in all subcontracts at any tier and require that all recipients of subcontract awards in excess of \$100,000 shall certify and disclose accordingly.

(c) Submission of this certification and disclosure is a prerequisite for making or entering into this contract imposed by section 1352, title 31, United States Code. Any person who makes an expenditure prohibited under this provision or who fails to file or amend the disclosure form to be filed or amended by this provision, shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$10,000, and not more than \$100,000, for each such failure.

(d) Indian tribes (except those chartered by States) and Indian organizations as defined in section 4 of the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act (25 U.S.C. 450B) are exempt from the requirements of this provision.

4. Organizational Conflicts of Interest Certification

The bidder certifies that to the best of its knowledge and belief and except as otherwise disclosed, he or she does not have any organizational conflict of interest which is defined as a situation in which the nature of work to be performed under this proposed contract and the bidder's organizational, financial, contractual, or other interests may, without some restriction on future activities:

- (a) Result in an unfair competitive advantage to the bidder; or,
- (b) Impair the bidder's objectivity in performing the contract work.

[] In the absence of any actual or apparent conflict, I hereby certify that to the best of my knowledge and belief, no actual or apparent conflict of interest exists with regard to my possible performance of this procurement.

5. Bidder's Certification of Eligibility

(a) By the submission of this bid, the bidder certifies that to the best of its knowledge and belief, neither it, nor any person or firm which has an interest in the bidder's firm, nor any of the bidder's subcontractors, is ineligible to:

(1) Be awarded contracts by any agency of the United States Government, HUD, or the State in which this contract is to be performed; or,

(2) Participate in HUD programs pursuant to 24 CFR Part 24.

(b) The certification in paragraph (a) above is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when making award. If it is later determined that the bidder knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, the contract may be terminated for default, and the bidder may be debarred or suspended from participation in HUD programs and other Federal contract programs.

6. Minimum Bid Acceptance Period

(a) "Acceptance period," as used in this provision, means the number of calendar days available to the PHA/IHA for awarding a contract from the date specified in this solicitation for receipt of bids.

(b) This provision supersedes any language pertaining to the acceptance period that may appear elsewhere in this solicitation.

(c) The PHA/IHA requires a minimum acceptance period of [Contracting Officer insert time period] calendar days.

(d) In the space provided immediately below, bidders may specify a longer acceptance period than the PHA's/IHA's minimum requirement. The bidder allows the following acceptance period: calendar days.

(e) A bid allowing less than the PHA's/IHA's minimum acceptance period will be rejected.

(f) The bidder agrees to execute all that it has undertaken to do, in compliance with its bid, if that bid is accepted in writing within (1) the acceptance period stated in paragraph (c) above or (2) any longer acceptance period stated in paragraph (d) above.

7. Small, Minority, Women-Owned Business Concern Representation

The bidder represents and certifies as part of its bid/ offer that it --

(a) [] is, [] is not a small business concern. "Small business concern," as used in this provision, means a concern, including its affiliates, that is independently owned and operated, not dominant in the field of operation in which it is bidding, and qualified as a small business under the criteria and size standards in 13 CFR 121.

(b) [] is, [] is not a women-owned business enterprise. "Women-owned business enterprise," as used in this provision, means a business that is at least 51 percent owned by a woman or women who are U.S. citizens and who also control and operate the business.

(c) [] is, [] is not a minority business enterprise. "Minority business enterprise," as used in this provision, means a business which is at least 51 percent owned or controlled by one or more minority group members or, in the case of a publicly owned business, at least 51 percent of its voting stock is owned by one or more minority group members, and whose management and daily operations are controlled by one or more such individuals. For the purpose of this definition, minority group members are:

(Check the block applicable to you)

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| [] Black Americans | [] Asian Pacific Americans |
| [] Hispanic Americans | [] Asian Indian Americans |
| [] Native Americans | [] Hasidic Jewish Americans |

8. Indian-Owned Economic Enterprise and Indian Organization Representation (applicable only if this solicitation is for a contract to be performed on a project for an Indian Housing Authority)

The bidder represents and certifies that it:

(a) [] is, [] is not an Indian-owned economic enterprise. "Economic enterprise," as used in this provision, means any commercial, industrial, or business activity established or organized for the purpose of profit, which is at least 51 percent Indian owned. "Indian," as used in this provision, means any person who is a member of any tribe, band, group, pueblo, or community which is recognized by the Federal Government as eligible for services from the Bureau of Indian Affairs and any "Native" as defined in the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act.

(b) [] is, [] is not an Indian organization. "Indian organization," as used in this provision, means the governing body of any Indian tribe or entity established or recognized by such governing body. Indian "tribe" means any Indian tribe, band, group, pueblo, or

community including Native villages and Native groups (including corporations organized by Kenai, Juneau, Sitka, and Kodiak) as defined in the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, which is recognized by the Federal Government as eligible for services from the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

9. Certification of Eligibility Under the Davis-Bacon Act (applicable to construction contracts exceeding \$2,000)

(a) By the submission of this bid, the bidder certifies that neither it nor any person or firm who has an interest in the bidder's firm is a person or firm ineligible to be awarded contracts by the United States Government by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).

(b) No part of the contract resulting from this solicitation shall be subcontracted to any person or firm ineligible to be awarded contracts by the United States Government by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).

(c) The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the U.S. Criminal Code, 18 U.S.C. 1001.

10. Certification of Nonsegregated Facilities (applicable to contracts exceeding \$10,000)

(a) The bidder's attention is called to the clause entitled **Equal Employment Opportunity** of the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction.

(b) "Segregated facilities," as used in this provision, means any waiting rooms, work areas, rest rooms and wash rooms, restaurants and other eating areas, time clocks, locker rooms and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing facilities provided for employees, that are segregated by explicit directive or are in fact segregated on the basis of race, color, religion, or national origin because of habit, local custom, or otherwise.

(c) By the submission of this bid, the bidder certifies that it does not and will not maintain or provide for its employees any segregated facilities at any of its establishments, and that it does not and will not permit its employees to perform their services at any location under its control where segregated facilities are maintained. The bidder agrees that a breach of this certification is a violation of the Equal Employment Opportunity clause in the contract.

(d) The bidder further agrees that (except where it has obtained identical certifications from proposed subcontractors for specific time periods) prior to entering into subcontracts which exceed \$10,000 and are not exempt from the requirements of the Equal Employment Opportunity clause, it will:

(1) Obtain identical certifications from the proposed subcontractors;

(2) Retain the certifications in its files; and

(3) Forward the following notice to the proposed subcontractors (except if the proposed subcontractors have submitted identical certifications for specific time periods):

Notice to Prospective Subcontractors of Requirement for Certifications of Nonsegregated Facilities

A Certification of Nonsegregated Facilities must be submitted before the award of a subcontract exceeding \$10,000 which is not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Employment Opportunity clause of the prime contract. The certification may be submitted either for each subcontract or for all subcontracts during a period (i.e., quarterly, semiannually, or annually).

Note: The penalty for making false statements in bids is prescribed in 18 U.S.C. 1001.

11. Clean Air and Water Certification (applicable to contracts exceeding \$100,000)

The bidder certifies that:

(a) Any facility to be used in the performance of this contract [] is, [] is not listed on the Environmental Protection Agency List of Violating Facilities:

(b) The bidder will immediately notify the PHA/IHA Contracting Officer, before award, of the receipt of any communication from the Administrator, or a designee, of the Environmental Protection Agency, indicating that any facility that the bidder proposes to use for the performance of the contract is under consideration to be listed on the EPA List of Violating Facilities; and,

(c) The bidder will include a certification substantially the same as this certification, including this paragraph (c), in every nonexempt subcontract.

12. Previous Participation Certificate (applicable to construction and equipment contracts exceeding \$50,000)

(a) The bidder shall complete and submit with his/her bid the Form HUD-2530, "Previous Participation Certificate." If the successful bidder does not submit the certificate with his/her bid, he/she must submit it within three (3) working days of bid opening. Failure to submit the certificate by that date may render the bid nonresponsive. No contract award will be made without a properly executed certificate.

(b) A fully executed "Previous Participation Certificate"

[] is, [] is not included with the bid.

13. Bidder's Signature

The bidder hereby certifies that the information contained in these certifications and representations is accurate, complete, and current.

(Signature and Date)

(Typed or Printed Name)

(Title)

(Company Name)

(Company Address)

SECTION 16

SECTION 3 POLICY, UTILIZATION PLAN AND EMPLOYEE WORKSHEETS

ST. CLAIR COUNTY HOUSING AUTHORITY
SECTION 3 POLICY

1. Background on the Section 3 Program

Section 3 is a policy mandated by the United States Congress. It refers to the third section of the Housing Act of 1968, as amended by section 915 of the Housing Community Development Act of 1992. The purpose of Section 3 is to "ensure that employment and other economic opportunities generated by certain Housing and Urban Development (HUD) financial assistance shall, to the greatest extent feasible, and consistent with existing Federal, State and local laws and regulations, be directed toward low and very low-income persons, particularly those who are recipients of government assistance for housing, and to business concerns which provide economic opportunities to low and very low-income persons."

Consistent with 24 CFR Part 135, as a recipient of HUD Public and Indian Housing funding, the St. Clair County Housing Authority (SCCHA) requires fulfillment of Section 3 obligations on contracts that make use of that assistance. These policies are consistent with the regulations governing the implementation of federally mandated Section 3 provisions, regardless of contract amount or whether it is designed as construction. The SCCHA works to provide a positive effect of the employment, training, contracting and other economic opportunities to its residents and other low income persons. In doing so, the SCCHA utilizes Section 3 as a means of promoting its mission of assisting qualifying individuals with not only housing assistance but assistance that leads ultimately to self-sufficiency.

2. Statement of Purpose

Section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968, as amended (12 U.S.C. 1701u)(Section 3) requires the SCCHA ensure that employment and other economic and business opportunities generated by the Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) financial assistance, to the greatest extent feasible, are directed to public housing residents and other low-income persons, particularly recipients of government housing assistance, and business concerns that provide economic opportunities to low and very low-income persons.

It is the policy of the St. Clair County Housing Authority to require its contractors to provide equal employment opportunity to all employees and applicants for employment without regard to race, color, religion, sex, national origin, disability, veteran's or marital status, or economic status and to take affirmative action to ensure that both job applicants and existing employees are given fair and equal treatment.

The SCCHA implements this policy through the awarding of contracts to create employment and business opportunities for residents of SCCHA and other qualified low and very-low income persons.

The policy should result in a reasonable level of success in the recruitment, employment and utilization of SCCHA residents and other eligible persons by SCCHA contractors working on contracts partially or wholly funded by HUD monies. The SCCHA shall examine and consider a contractor's or vendor's potential for success by providing employment and business opportunities to SCCHA residents prior to acting on proposed contract awards.

3. Definitions

Definitions are as follows:

- A) *Low-income person*: single persons and families whose incomes do not exceed 80% of the median income for the area.
- B) *Very Low income person*: single persons or families whose incomes do not exceed 50% of the median family income for the area.
- C) *Section 3 Business concern*: a business entity formed in accordance with State law that is either: a) 51% or more owned by a Section 3 resident; b) a business employing at least 30% full time Section 3 residents within 3 years of the date of first employment with the business were Section 3 residents, or; c) providing evidence of a commitment to subcontract in excess of 25% of the dollar award of all subcontracts to be awarded to businesses that meet the description of Section 3 business concern in sections a or b of this paragraph.
- D) *Section 3 resident*: a) A public housing resident or; b) a person assisted by the locally administered Housing Choice Voucher program or; c) a person who resides in the metropolitan area or non-metropolitan county in which Section 3 covered assistance is expended and is a person who is a low or very low income person.

4. Requirements of the SCCHA Section 3 Program

The Section 3 program seeks to aid Section 3 residents to the greatest extent feasible. SCCHA, its contractors and subcontractors have three ways they may satisfy the Section 3 Requirements:

- **Hiring low- and very low-income workers:**

Consistent with Section 3 guidelines, to the greatest extent feasible, hire at least 30% of the aggregate number of full-time new hires created by the contracted or grant driven work with a preference for the residents at the development where work is being performed. If a contractor is hiring 3 employees as a result of the contract at least 1 of them must be a Section 3 worker.

- **Awarding contracts to Section 3 business concerns:**

Attempt to award at least 10% of the total dollar amount of all Section 3 covered contracts to Section 3 business concerns for building trades work including maintenance, repair, remodeling, modernization and abatement of Public Housing or for building trades work arising in connection with housing rehabilitation, housing construction and other public construction.

Attempt to have general contractors award in excess of 25% of the dollar award of all subcontracts to be awarded to a Section 3 business concern.

It is the SCCHA goal to advocate for as many SCCHA residents as possible. Contractors are strongly encouraged to comply with Section 3 by hiring Section 3 eligible persons regardless of whether new hires are necessary.

- **Competitive Bids**

The St. Clair County Housing Authority has chosen to exceed the stated guidelines governing the participation of Section 3 business concerns in the SCCHA contracts for building trades work including the maintenance, repair, remodeling, modernization and abatement of Public Housing or for building trades work arising in connection with housing rehabilitation, housing construction and other public construction.

SCCHA shall provide those businesses that have been determined to qualify as a Section 3 business concern with a monetary advantage in the bidding and award process for all aforementioned contracts.

The SCCHA shall solicit bids from all businesses (Section 3 business concerns, and non-Section 3 business concerns). An award shall be made to the qualified Section 3 business concern with the highest priority ranking and with the lowest responsive bid if that bid:

- (a) is within the maximum total contract price established in the contracting party's budget for the specific project for which bids are being taken, and
- (b) is not more than "X" higher than the total bid price of the lowest responsive bid from any responsible bidder. "X" is determined as follows:

X = lesser of:

When the lowest responsive bid is:

At least \$25,000, but less than \$100,000	.....10% of that bid or \$9,000.
At least \$100,000, but less than \$200,000	.....9% of that bid or \$16,000.
At least \$200,000, but less than \$300,000	.....8% of that bid or \$21,000.
At least \$300,000, but less than \$400,000	.....7% of that bid or \$24,000.
At least \$400,000, but less than \$500,000	.....6% of that bid or \$25,000.
At least \$500,000, but less than \$1 million	.....5% of that bid or \$40,000.
At least \$1 million, but less than \$2 million	.....4% of that bid or \$60,000.
At least \$2 million, but less than \$4 million	.....3% of that bid or \$80,000.
At least \$4 million, but less than \$7 million	.....2% of that bid or \$105,000.
\$7 million or more	.....1/2% of the lowest responsive bid with no dollar limit.

5. St. Clair County Housing Authority Responsibilities

The SCCHA, as recipient of Public and Indian Housing funding, accepts the responsibility of not only enforcing the Section 3 requirements, but also pro-actively facilitating compliance with Section 3. The SCCHA fulfills this responsibility in the following ways:

1. Notifying Section 3 residents of opportunities through posting job openings in the Central Office and other management offices.
2. Notifying contractors in each pre-job meeting of the Section 3 requirements;
3. Incorporating the Section 3 clause in all of its contracts;
4. Providing applications for employment at the SCCHA front desk and allowing applications to be submitted at the same location; and providing applications for employment on the SCCHA website.
5. Encouraging training of Section 3 residents through support of the SCCHA Resident Councils;
6. Providing an employment data form to interested Section 3 residents (upon admittance to public or Section 8 housing) which is kept on file as a resource for the SCCHA and contractors when seeking to hire Section 3 workers;
7. Documenting actions taken to comply with Section 3 requirements;
8. Reporting annually on its efforts regarding Section 3 implementation (see form HUD-60002 Attachment B)
9. Attempt to award at least 10% of the total dollar amount of all Section 3 covered contracts for building trades work including maintenance, repair, remodeling, modernization and abatement of Public Housing or for building trades work arising in connection with housing rehabilitation, housing construction and other public construction.
10. SCCHA shall refuse to award contracts to businesses or persons found to be in prior

violation with Section 3 requirements no matter the venue.

6. Contractor Responsibilities

SCCHA requires that contractors and subcontractors satisfy Section 3 requirements by:

- **New Hires – Section 3 eligible individuals**

New hires are described as full time employees for permanent, temporary or seasonal employment opportunities. The general contractor and its subcontractor(s) have a requirement of 30% of new hires to be Section 3 residents.

- **Section 3 business concerns**

General contractors shall provide evidence of a commitment to subcontract in excess of 25% of the dollar award of all subcontracts to be awarded to businesses that meet the description of Section 3 business concerns as defined above.

- **Documentation of Section 3 Compliance**

1. Contractors must submit, with any and all bids or proposals, an action plan (Schedule "A") describing their implementation of Section 3 regulations. **Omission of this document with a bid or proposal shall deem that bid or proposal non-responsive and therefore ineligible to be awarded a contract.** Allowances may be made by the SCCHA relative to contractor Section 3 submissions in emergency procurement situations.
2. Recommended activities to demonstrate "Training and Employment Efforts" and "Efforts to Award Contracts to Section 3 Business Concerns" are listed on pages 704, 705 and 706 of 24 CFR Part 135, attached.

7. Preferences and Eligibility

- A) Regarding the hiring of Section 3 residents, preference shall be given to those residents who live in the complex where the covered assistance is expended. Next, the Section 3 residents from other complexes to include those residents assisted by the Housing Choice Voucher Program shall be sought. If no Section 3 residents are available from the complexes, the SCCHA and the contractors shall give preference to any Section 3 resident within SCCHA's jurisdiction.
- B) Regarding the contracting opportunities for section 3 business concern, preference shall be given to business concerns owned at least 51% by residents of the complex where the covered assistance is expended. Next, Section 3 business concerns that are owned at least 51% by residents of other complexes shall be sought. If no Section 3 business concern is available from the complexes, the SCCHA and the contractor shall give preference to any Section 3 business concern.
- C) Regarding eligibility, a Section 3 resident seeking employment must fulfill the requirements of the position sought and provide evidence of their Section 3 status. (e.g., receipt of public assistance, tax returns). A Section 3 business concern seeking to win a contract must fulfill the requirements of the contract in full and, if asked, provide evidence of their Section 3 status.

8. Complaints and Compliance

Any Section 3 resident or business concern that feels that the Section 3 regulations were not

complied with may file a complaint directly to the Assistant Secretary for Fair Housing and Equal Opportunity at the following address:

Assistant Secretary for Fair Housing and Equal Opportunity
Department of Housing and Urban Affairs
Washington, DC 20410

The complaint must be in writing and be received within 180 days from the date of the action upon which the complaint is based. It should include the complainant's name and address, the SCCHA or contractor's name and address and a description of the act in question. The complainant will receive a response from HUD within 10 days in which further investigation will be explained.

Forms to file a complaint are not required but are available upon request.

9. Attachments

1. Section 3 Contract Clause
2. HUD form 60002-Section 3 Summary Report
3. 24 CFR Part 135-Section 3 Regulations
4. Section 3 Bid Submittals

SECTION 3 CLAUSE

The work to be performed under this contract is on a project assisted under a program providing direct Federal financial assistance from the Department of Housing and Urban Development and is subject to the requirements of Section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968, as amended, 12 U.S.C. 1701u, Section 3 requires that to the greatest extent feasible, opportunities for training and employment be given to lower income residents of the area of the Section 3 covered project, and contracts for work in connection with the project be awarded to business concerns which are located in, or owned in substantial part by persons residing in the area of the Section 3 covered project.

The parties to this contract will comply with the provisions of said Section 3 and the regulations issued pursuant thereto by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development set forth in 24 CFR 135, and all applicable rules and orders of the Department issued there under prior to the execution of this contract. The parties to this contract certify and agree that they are under no contractual or other disability that would prevent them from complying with these requirements.

The contractor will send to each labor organization or representative of workers with which he has a collective bargaining agreement or other contract or understanding, if any, a notice advising the said labor organization or worker's representative of his commitments under this Section 3 clause and shall post copies of the notice in conspicuous places available to employees and applicants for employments or training.

The contractor will include the Section 3 clause in every subcontract for work in connection with the project and will, at the direction of the applicant for or recipient of Federal Financial assistance, take appropriate action pursuant to the subcontract upon finding that the subcontractor is in violation of regulations issued by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, 24 CFR Part 135. The contractor will not subcontract with any subcontractor where it has notice or knowledge that the latter has been found in violation of regulations under 24 CFR part 135 and will not let any subcontract unless the subcontractor has first provided it with a preliminary statement of ability to comply with the requirements of these regulations. Compliance with the provisions of section 3, the regulations set forth in 24 CFR part 135, and all applicable rules and orders of the Department issued there under prior to the execution of the contract, shall be a condition of the Federal financial assistance provided to the project, binding upon the applicant or recipient, its contractors and subcontractors, its successors, and assigns to those sanctions specified by the grant or loan agreement or contract through which Federal assistance is provided, and to such sanctions as are specified by 24 CFR part 135.

The contractor will certify that any vacant employment positions, including training position, that are filled (1) after the contractor is selected but before the contract is executed, and (2) with persons other than those to whom the regulations of 24 CFR part 135 require employment opportunities to be directed, were not filled to circumvent the contractor's obligations under 24 CFR part 135.

Noncompliance with HUD's regulations in 24 CFR part 135 may result in sanctions, termination of this contract for default, and debarment or suspension from future HUD assisted contracts.

**St. Clair County Housing Authority (SCCHA)
Modernization Department Contracts**

**SECTION 3 UTILIZATION PLAN
(To be completed by Prime Contractor)**

Prime Contractor's Name _____

RFP/IFB/Contract or PO Number _____ Date Form Completed _____

Project Title _____

Contractor Name/Title _____

E-Mail Address _____

The contractor agrees to comply with all provisions of Section 3as set forth in 24CFR 135.1 et al and SCCHA Resolutions implementing Section 3 requirements. The contractor hereby submits this document to identify employment, subcontracting and other opportunities for St. Clair County Housing Authority residents and low and very-low income St. Clair County area residents during the term of the contract between SCCHA and the Contractor. Any changes to this Utilization Plan must be approved by a Section 3 Change Form.

THE CONTRACTOR AGREES TO MEET ITS SECTION 3 REQUIREMENTS THROUGH THE FOLLOWING:

Hiring

The contractor affirms that the jobs identified shall be for meaningful employment that may or may not be related to the scope of services covered under Contract/Purchase Order# _____

The Contractor has committed to employ _____ number of resident(s) in order to comply with its Section 3 requirements.

NOTE: A prime contractor may satisfy the SCCHA Resident Hiring Requirements through the hiring of residents through their subcontractor(s).

A job order form must be submitted with this schedule A when hiring is one of the contractor's methods is satisfying Section 3 requirements.

The contractor must complete the following table as instructed below:

1. Indicate each job title for all phases of this contract.
2. The number of positions which will be needed in each category.
3. How many of those positions are currently filled.
4. Number currently filled by low and very low income SCCHA residents.
5. Number currently filled by low and very low income St. Clair County area residents.
6. How many positions need to be filled for each job title.
7. The number of low and very low income SCCHA residents (LISCCHAR) or Low and very low income St. Clair Area residents (LISCCAR) to be hired at each job title.

St. Clair County Housing Authority (SCCHA)

Modernization Department Contracts

Hiring Commitments

		Currently Filled (total employees currently working)				
1. JOB TITLE	2. Total employees needed to complete the work	3. Total of all employees at this job title	4. LISCCHAR working at this job title	5. LISCCAR working at this job title	6. Total new hires needed	7. LISCCHAR or LISCCAR Indicate how many Section 3 employees you will hire for this job title
1.						
2.						
3						
4						
5						
6						
7						
8						
9						
10						
11						
12						
13						
14						
15						

**St. Clair County Housing Authority
Modernization Department Contracts**

**Section 3 UTILIZATION PLAN
(To be completed by Prime Contractor)**

Contracting

Per 24 CFR 135.30, Section 3 requires construction contracts to subcontract at least 10% of the work to Section 3 Business Concerns and 3% of the work for all other contracts.

A Section 3 Business concern, under HUD regulations, is a business concern:

1. that is 51% or more owned by Section 3 residents; or
2. Whose permanent, full time employees include persons, at least 30% of whom are currently Section 3 residents, or within three years of the date of first employment with the business concern were section 3 residents; or
3. That provides evidence of a commitment to subcontract in excess of 25% of the dollar award of all subcontracts to be awarded to business concerns that meet the qualifications set forth in paragraph (1) or (2) in this definition of "section 3 business concern".

The prime contractor will subcontract with a total of _____ Section 3 Business Concerns totaling _____ % of the contract value.

In the section below, outline the Section 3 business concern that will hold subcontracts with your firm under this contract (Note: Each subcontractor listed below must submit a corresponding Schedule C)

A. COMPANY NAME: _____

ADDRESS: _____

CONTACT PERSON: _____ TELEPHONE: _____

E-MAIL ADDRESS: _____

ORIGINAL CONTRACT DOLLAR VALUE: _____

AMENDED CONTRACT VALUE: _____

(Note: Amended contract value only used when changes are made and approved by SCCHA during a contract)

WORK TO BE PERFORMED/MATERIALS SUPPLIED: _____

Type of participation: Direct Indirect

Anticipated performance timeframe (When will the contractor be onsite performing work and for how long): _____

**St. Clair County Housing Authority
Modernization Department Contracts**

**Section 3 UTILIZATION PLAN
(To be completed by Prime Contractor)**

B. COMPANY NAME: _____

ADDRESS: _____

CONTACT PERSON: _____ TELEPHONE: _____

E-MAIL ADDRESS: _____

ORIGINAL CONTRACT DOLLAR VALUE: _____

AMENDED CONTRACT VALUE: _____

(Note: Amended contract value only used when changes are made and approved by SCCHA during a contract)

WORK TO BE PERFORMED/MATERIALS SUPPLIED: _____

Type of participation: Direct Indirect

Anticipated performance timeframe (When will the contractor be onsite performing work and for how long): _____

C. COMPANY NAME: _____

ADDRESS: _____

CONTACT PERSON: _____ TELEPHONE: _____

E-MAIL ADDRESS: _____

ORIGINAL CONTRACT DOLLAR VALUE: _____

AMENDED CONTRACT VALUE: _____

(Note: Amended contract value only used when changes are made and approved by SCCHA during a contract)

WORK TO BE PERFORMED/MATERIALS SUPPLIED: _____

Type of participation: Direct Indirect

Anticipated performance timeframe (When will the contractor be onsite performing work and for how long): _____

**St. Clair County Housing Authority
Modernization Department Contracts**

**Section 3 UTILIZATION PLAN
(To be completed by Prime Contractor)**

D. COMPANY NAME: _____

ADDRESS: _____

CONTACT PERSON: _____ TELEPHONE: _____

E-MAIL ADDRESS: _____

ORIGINAL CONTRACT DOLLAR VALUE: _____

AMENDED CONTRACT VALUE: _____

(Note: Amended contract value only used when changes are made and approved by SCCHA during a contract)

WORK TO BE PERFORMED/MATERIALS SUPPLIED: _____

Type of participation: Direct Indirect

Anticipated performance timeframe (When will the contractor be onsite performing work and for how long): _____

E. COMPANY NAME: _____

ADDRESS: _____

CONTACT PERSON: _____ TELEPHONE: _____

E-MAIL ADDRESS: _____

ORIGINAL CONTRACT DOLLAR VALUE: _____

AMENDED CONTRACT VALUE: _____

(Note: Amended contract value only used when changes are made and approved by SCCHA during a contract)

WORK TO BE PERFORMED/MATERIALS SUPPLIED: _____

Type of participation: Direct Indirect

Anticipated performance timeframe (When will the contractor be onsite performing work and for how long): _____

OTHER ECONOMIC OPPORTUNITIES

Per 24 CFR 135.40 other economic opportunities offer an effective means of empowering low-income persons, contractors are encouraged to undertake efforts to provide to low-income persons economic opportunities other than training, employment and contract awards, in connection with Section 3 covered assistance.

**St. Clair County Housing Authority
Modernization Department Contracts**

**Section 3 UTILIZATION PLAN
(To be completed by Prime Contractor)**

In the space below, please outline your plan to provide other economic opportunities to a Section 3 or low-income person (if more space is needed, please provide an attachment to this page) Examples of plans may include: internship programs, mentorship programs and teaming agreements. Please note that any indirect subcontracting should also be described in the section below.

**St. Clair County Housing Authority
Modernization Department Contracts**

**Section 3 UTILIZATION PLAN
(To be completed by Prime Contractor)**

By signing below, the contractor hereby agrees to comply with the Section 3 requirements indicated above. To the extent of this form is contingent upon future information, for example price negotiations, request for specific services, etc. the undersigned hereby affirms and agrees to fully adhere to the SCCHA Section 3 policy. Furthermore, the undersigned acknowledges and affirms responsibility for completion and submission off this form prior to bid award of a contract from the SCCHA.

Name of Prime Contractor (print or type)

Name of Authorized officer

Date:

Name of Notary

State of _____ County of _____ on _____

This _____ Day of _____, 20_____

BEFORE ME APPEARED (NAME) _____

TO ME PERSONNALLY KNOWN WHO, BEING DULY SWORN, DID EXECUTE THE FOREGOING AFFIDAVIT AND DID STATE THAT (HE OR SHE) WAS PROPERLY AUTHORIZED BY THE PRIME CONTRACTOR TO EXECUTE THIS AFFIDAVIT AND DID SO AS HIS OR HER FREE ACT OR DEED.

NOTARY PUBLIC: _____ (SEAL):

MY COMMISSION EXPIRES: _____

SCCHA APPROVAL: _____

Director of Modernization

Date

Subject to funding agency approval, this authority will give preference to Bidder that conform to HUD regulation #85.36 which is as follows:

24 CFR 85.36 Procurement

Subsection (E) contracting with small and minority firms, women's business enterprise and labor surplus area firms.

- (1) The grantee and subgrantee will take all necessary affirmative steps to assure that minority firms, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms are used when possible.
- (2) Affirmative steps shall include:
 - (i) Placing qualified small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises on solicitation lists;
 - (ii) Assuring that small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;
 - (iii) Dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;
 - (iv) Establishing delivery schedules, where the requirement permits, which encourage participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;
 - (v) Using the services and assistance of the Small business Administration, and the Minority Business Development Agency of the Department of Commerce; and
 - (vi) Requiring the prime contractor, if subcontracts are to be let, to take the affirmative steps listed in paragraphs (e) (2) (I) through (v) of this section.

SECTION 17

SPECIFICATIONS

**PROJECT MANUAL
TOC - TABLE OF CONTENTS**

Hurst-Rosche, Inc.
No. 5 Bank Square
East St. Louis, Illinois 62203

PROJECT MANUAL FOR
Boiler, HVAC and Water Heater Replacements
AMPs 4, 5 and 6
Belleville, Washington Park and New Athens, Illinois
St. Clair County Housing Authority
St. Clair County, Illinois
IFB-20-B0001, HR# 280-3159

Date: February 20, 2020

Section	Title	Pages
PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTION REQUIREMENTS GROUP		
DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS		
INTRODUCTORY INFORMATION		
00 01 10	Table of Contents	00 01 10 -1- 2
SPECIFICATIONS GROUP		
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS SUBGROUP		
DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS		
01 10 00	Summary	01 10 00 -1- 2
01 20 00	Price and Payment Procedures	01 20 00 -1- 5
01 30 00	Administrative Requirements	01 30 00 -1- 5
01 33 00	Submittal Procedures	01 33 00 -1- 6
01 40 00	Quality Requirements	01 40 00 -1- 3
01 50 00	Temporary Facilities and Controls	01 50 00 -1- 4
01 60 00	Product Requirements	01 60 00 -1- 3
01 70 00	Execution and Closeout Requirements	01 70 00 -1- 5
DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING		
22 05 17	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping	22 05 17-1-6
22 05 29	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment	22 05 29-1-13
22 07 19	Plumbing Piping Insulation	22 07 19-1-21
22 11 16	Domestic Water Piping	22 11 16-1-19
22 33 00	Electric Domestic Water Heaters	22 33 00-1-8
DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR-CONDITIONING (HVAC)		
23 05 13	Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment	23 05 13-1-3
23 05 29	Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment	23 05 29-1-14
23 05 53	Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment	23 05 53-1-7
23 05 93	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC	23 05 93-1-15
23 07 19	HVAC Piping Insulation	23 07 19-1-26
23 11 23	Facility Natural-Gas Piping	23 11 23-1-21
23 21 13	Hydronic Piping	23 21 13-1-14

23 21 23	Hydronic Pumps	23 21 23-1-5
23 23 00	Refrigerant Piping	23 23 00-1-13
23 31 13	Metal Ducts	23 31 13-1-20
23 33 00	Air Duct Accessories	23 33 00-1-18
23 52 16	Condensing Boilers	23 52 16-1-9
23 54 13	Electric-Resistance Furnaces	23 54 13-1-7
23 63 13	Air-Cooled Refrigerant Condensers	23 63 13-1-7
23 73 13	Indoor, Basic Air-Handling Units	23 73 13-1-10
23 81 26	Split-System Air-Conditioners	23 81 26-1-8
23 81 46	Water-Source Unitary Heat Pumps	23 81 46-1-8

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

26 05 19	Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables	26 05 19-1-9
26 05 23	Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables	26 05 23-1-10
26 28 16	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers	26 28 16-1-14

SPECIFIER: Marcus Richards, P.E. 615.454.6615

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 10 00

SUMMARY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Contract description.
- B. PHA supplied products.
- C. Contractor's use of site and premises.
- D. Other facilities and services.
- E. Contract Documents.

1.2 CONTRACT DESCRIPTION

- A. Base Bid: Work includes:
 - 1. All work as indicated on the Drawings and related Specifications.

B. PHA SUPPLIED PRODUCTS

- A. Except as specifically noted, Contractor shall provide and pay for:
 - 1. All labor, materials, and equipment used for construction of and/or incorporated into the project.
 - 2. All tools, construction equipment, and machinery.
 - 3. Required building permits, and all inspection fees by governmental authorities.
 - 4. Other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of work.
- B. PHA is exempt from sales tax on products permanently incorporated in work.
 - 1. Obtain sales tax exemption certificate number from PHA.
 - 2. Place exemption certificate number on invoices for materials incorporated into work.
 - 3. Upon completion of work, file with PHA a notarized statement that all purchases made under exemption certificate were entitled to be exempt and furnish copies of invoices to PHA.
 - 4. Pay legally assessed penalties for improper use of exemption certificate number.
- C. Comply with codes, ordinances, rules, regulations, orders, and other legal requirements of public authorities that bear on performance of work.
- D. Promptly submit written notice to Architect/Engineer of observed variance of contract documents from legal requirements.
 - 1. It is not Contractor's responsibility to make certain that drawings and specifications comply with codes and regulations.

- a. Appropriate modifications to contract documents will account for/reflect necessary changes.
- b. Assume responsibility for work known to be contrary to such requirements if written notice is not provided by the Contractor to the Architect/Engineer.

1.3 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

- A. Confine operations at site to areas permitted by:
 - 1. Law.
 - 2. Ordinances.
 - 3. Permits.
 - 4. Contract Documents.
- B. Do not unreasonably encumber site with materials or equipment.
- C. Assume full responsibility for protection and safe-keeping of products stored on premises.
- D. Move any stored products that interfere with operations of PHA or other contractors.
- E. Obtain and pay for use of additional storage or work areas needed for operations.
- F. Contractor shall have limited use of site for execution of work.
 - 1. Allow for public use of all adjoining streets and sidewalks.

1.5 OTHER FACILITIES AND SERVICES

- A. Contractor shall furnish, erect and maintain temporary barriers, or warnings as may be required for performance of his work.
 - 1. All such equipment shall be substantially designed, constructed and maintained in accordance with applicable federal, state, and local laws, ordinances, and regulations, and shall be promptly removed when no longer needed.

1.6 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. Contractor will be furnished free of charge four (4) copies of drawings and specifications.
- B. On request, additional copies will be furnished to Contractor at cost of reproduction, postage and handling.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 20 00

PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Schedule of values.
- B. Applications for payment.
- C. Unit prices.

1.2 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

A. REQUIREMENTS INCLUDE

- 1. Contractor.
 - a. Prepare and submit Schedule of Values (4 copies) to architect on HUD Form 51000 to Architect/Engineer 10 business days after the date of the Pre-construction Meeting.
- 2. Subcontractors:
 - a. Submit Schedule of Values to Contractor at least 15 business days prior to submitting first application for payment.
 - b. Support values given with data to substantiate their correctness.
 - c. Submit quantities of designated materials.
 - d. List quantities of materials specified under unit prices.
 - e. Use Schedule of Values as only basis for application for payment.
- 3. Payment for materials stored on or off site will be limited to those materials listed in Schedule of Values.

B. FORM OF SUBMITTAL

- 1. The schedule of values shall be prepared in such manner that each major item of Work and each subcontracted item of Work is shown as a separate item (Materials and Labor) on "Schedule of Amounts for Contract Payments", form HUD-51000.
- 2. Contractor shall use the specification index as a basis of example and format for listing and itemizing costs of work.

C. PREPARATION

- 1. Itemize separate line item cost for each of following cost items:
 - a. Itemize separate line items for total installed costs; material and labor shall be separate line items. For each line item indicate quantity, unit of measure, cost per unit, and total less general profit, overhead and bond.
 - b. Overhead and profit.
 - c. Bonds.
 - d. Insurance.

- e. General requirements:
 - 1) Break down general requirements to temporary facilities. Show initial installation and maintenance and fuel consumption.
2. Itemize separate line item cost for work specified in each section of the specifications. Identify work of:
 - a. Contractor's own labor forces.
 - b. All subcontractors.
 - c. All major suppliers of products or equipment.
3. Break down installed costs into:
 - a. Delivered cost of product, with taxes paid.
 - b. Labor cost, excluding overhead and profit.
4. For each line item that has installed value of more than \$5,000.00, break down costs to list major products or operations under each item.
 - a. Contractor, subcontractor or supplier.
 - b. Specification section number.
 - c. Description of work or material.
 - d. Quantity.
 - e. Unit price.
 - f. Scheduled value.
 - g. % of contract.
5. Round off figures to nearest one hundred dollars.
6. Make sum of total costs of all items listed in Schedule equal to total contract sum.

D. REVIEW AND RESUBMITTAL

1. After review by Architect/Engineer, revise and resubmit Schedule as directed.
2. Follow original submittal procedure.

E. UPDATE

1. Update Schedule of Values when:
 - a. Directed by Architect/Engineer.
 - b. Change of subcontractor or supplier occurs.
 - c. Change of product or equipment occurs.

1.3 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

A. DESCRIPTION

1. Submit applications for payment to Architect/Engineer for processing no later than 10 days prior to date established for progress payment meeting.
 - a. If a date is not mutually agreed upon, the first day of each month is established as date of progress payment.
2. Related requirements specified elsewhere:
 - a. Agreement between PHA and Contractor: Lump sum and unit prices.
 - b. General Conditions of the Contract for Construction: Progress payments, retainages and final payment.
 - 1) Allowances.
 - 2) Schedule of Values.
 - 3) Project Closeout.

B. FORMAT AND DATA REQUIRED

1. Forms to be used/submitted by Contractor:
 - a. HUD-51000 – Schedule of Amounts for Contract Payment.
 - b. HUD-51001 – Periodic Estimate for Partial Payments.
 - c. HUD-51002 – Schedule of Change of Orders.
 - d. HUD-51003 – Schedule of Materials Stored.
 - e. HUD-51004 – Summary of Materials Stored.
 - f. HUD-5372 – Construction Progress Schedule.
 - g. HUD-5371 – Request of Approval of Subcontractor.
 - h. HUD – Labor Relations Agreement.
 - i. HUD – Payroll Instructions.
 - j. HUD - Notarized Final and Partial Waivers of Lien.
 - k. HUD - Non-Collusive Affidavit.
2. Applications shall be itemized.
 - a. Format, schedules, line items and values: Those of Schedule of Values accepted by Architect/Engineer.
 - b. Quantities and costs submitted for progress percent and payments only, additions to and from contract will be estimated and verified for quantity and costs.

C. PREPARATION OF APPLICATION FOR EACH PROGRESS PAYMENT

1. Application form:
 - a. Fill in required information, including that for orders executed prior to date of submittal of application.
 - b. Execute certification with signature of a responsible officer of contracting firm.
 - c. Fill in total list of all scheduled component items of work, with item number and scheduled dollar value for each item.
 - d. Fill in dollar value in each column for each scheduled line item when work has been performed or products stored.
 - 1) Round off values to nearest dollar, or as specified, for Schedule of Values.
 - e. List each change order executed prior to date of submission at end of continuation sheets.
 - 1) List by change order number and description as for an original component item or work.
2. Each application for progress payment shall be accompanied by the following supporting documents.
 - a. Certification.
 - b. HUD-51001 – Periodic Estimate for Partial Payments.
 - c. HUD-51002 – Schedule of Change of Orders.
 - d. HUD-51003 – Schedule of Materials Stored.
 - e. HUD-51004 – Summary of Materials Stored.
 - f. HUD-5372 – Construction Progress Schedule.
 - g. HUD – Payroll Instructions.
 - h. Notarized Final and Partial Waivers of Lien.

D. MATERIAL OR EQUIPMENT NOT INCORPORATED IN THE WORK

1. Progress payments will be made for materials and equipment not incorporated in the Work provided that:
 - a. Such materials and equipment have been delivered to and suitably stored at site or some other location approved in writing by PHA and Architect/Engineer. All such materials stored off-site shall be marked or tagged with identification of project to which they are assigned.
 - b. Contractor submits evidence of title to such materials and equipment.
 - c. Care and custody of such materials and equipment and all costs incurred for movement and storage shall be responsibility of Contractor.
 - d. Such materials and equipment are suitably insured by Contractor. Contractor shall submit a certificate of insurance showing the PHA as an additional insured and showing amount of insurance coverage.

E. SUBSTANTIATING DATA FOR PROGRESS PAYMENTS

1. When the PHA or Architect/Engineer requires substantiating data, Contractor shall submit suitable information with a cover letter identifying:
 - a. Project.
 - b. Application number and date.
 - c. Detailed list of enclosures.
 - d. For stored products:
 - 1) Item number and identification as shown on application.
 - 2) Description of specific material.
 - 3) Bills of Lading.
2. Submit one copy of data and cover letter for each copy of application.

F. PREPARATION OF APPLICATION FOR FINAL PAYMENT

1. Provide application for final payment in accord with Section 01 70 00.
2. Fill in application form as specified for progress payments.
3. Provide for final statement of accounting as specified in Section 01 70 00 - Contract Closeout.
4. Submit final waivers of lien for Contractor's work, sub-contractor's work, and suppliers on Schedule of Values as required by Architect/Engineer.

G. SUBMITTAL PROCEDURE

1. Submit applications for payment to Architect/Engineer a minimum of 10 calendar days prior to scheduled meeting, or, in absence of other agreement, on first day of month. Late submittals may cause payment to be delayed to following monthly pay period.
2. Number: Three (3) originals of each application and back-up data and all required forms. If all forms and data are not included, the pay request will be returned to Contractor with no further review.
3. When Architect/Engineer finds application properly completed and correct, he will transmit certificate for payment to PHA, with copy to Contractor.

1.4 UNIT PRICES

A. REQUIREMENTS INCLUDE

1. Unit price means a fixed price, including all overhead, profit and all other costs of whatever nature and character for a specified unit of work. (**Unit prices may be used to add or deduct work from the base bid.**) The PHA may reject or negotiate any unit prices, which it considers excessive or unreasonable.

B. RELATED REQUIREMENTS

1. Specified Elsewhere:
 - a. Bid Form: description of unit prices

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 30 00

ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Coordination and project conditions.
- B. Field engineering.
- C. Preconstruction meeting.
- D. Progress meetings.
- E. Pre-installation meetings.
- F. Cutting and patching.
- G. Special procedures.

1.2 COORDINATION AND PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Coordinate scheduling, submittals, and Work of various sections of Project Manual to ensure efficient and orderly sequence of installation of interdependent construction elements, with provisions for accommodating items installed later.
- B. Verify utility requirements and characteristics of operating equipment are compatible with building utilities. Coordinate work of various sections having interdependent responsibilities for installing, connecting to, and placing in service, operating equipment.
- C. Coordinate space requirements, supports, and installation of mechanical and electrical Work indicated diagrammatically on Drawings. Follow routing shown for pipes, ducts, and conduit, as closely as practicable; place runs parallel with lines of building. Utilize spaces efficiently to maximize accessibility for other installations, for maintenance, and for repairs.
- D. In finished areas except as otherwise indicated, conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring within construction. Coordinate locations of fixtures and outlets with finish elements.
- E. Coordinate completion and clean-up of Work of separate sections in preparation for Substantial Completion and for portions of Work designated for PHA's partial occupancy.
- F. After PHA occupancy of premises, coordinate access to site for correction of defective Work and Work not in accordance with Contract Documents, to minimize disruption of PHA's activities.

1.3 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Verify set-backs and easements; confirm drawing dimensions and elevations.
- B. Provide field engineering services. Establish elevations, lines, and levels, utilizing recognized engineering survey practices.

1.4 PRECONSTRUCTION MEETING

- A. PHA Architect/Engineer will schedule meeting after Notice of Award.
- B. Attendance Required: PHA, Architect/Engineer, and Contractor.
- C. Agenda:
 1. Execution of PHA-Contractor Agreement.
 2. Submission of executed bonds and insurance certificates.
 3. Distribution of Contract Documents.
 4. Submission of list of Subcontractors, list of products, schedule of values, and progress schedule.
 5. Designation of personnel representing parties in Contract, and Architect/Engineer.
 6. Procedures and processing of field decisions, submittals, substitutions, applications for payments, proposal request, Change Orders, and Contract closeout procedures.
 7. Scheduling.
 8. Scheduling activities of Geotechnical Engineer.
- D. Architect/Engineer will record minutes and distribute copies with reasonable promptness after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect/Engineer, PHA, and those affected by decisions made.

1.5 PROGRESS MEETINGS

- A. Schedule and administer meetings throughout progress of the Work at maximum monthly intervals.
- B. Architect/Engineer will make arrangements for meetings, prepare agenda with copies for participants, preside at meetings.
- C. Attendance Required: Job superintendent, major subcontractors and suppliers, PHA, Architect/Engineer, as appropriate to agenda topics for each meeting.
- D. Agenda:
 1. Review minutes of previous meetings.
 2. Review of Work progress.
 3. Field observations, problems, and decisions.
 4. Identification of problems impeding planned progress.
 5. Review of submittals schedule and status of submittals.
 6. Review of off-site fabrication and delivery schedules.

7. Maintenance of progress schedule.
8. Corrective measures to regain projected schedules.
9. Planned progress during succeeding work period.
10. Coordination of projected progress.
11. Maintenance of quality and work standards.
12. Effect of proposed changes on progress schedule and coordination.
13. Other business relating to Work.

1.6 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. When required in individual specification sections, convene pre-installation meetings at Project site prior to commencing work of specific section.
- B. Require attendance of parties directly affecting, or affected by, Work of specific section.
- C. Notify Architect/Engineer four days in advance of meeting date.
- D. Prepare agenda and preside at meeting:
 1. Review conditions of installation, preparation and installation procedures.
 2. Review coordination with related work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Employ skilled and experienced installer to perform cutting and patching.
- B. Submit written request in advance of cutting or altering elements affecting:
 1. Structural integrity of element.
 2. Integrity of weather-exposed or moisture-resistant elements.
 3. Efficiency, maintenance, or safety of element.
 4. Visual qualities of sight exposed elements.
 5. Work of PHA or separate contractor.
- C. Execute cutting, fitting, and patching including excavation and fill, to complete Work, and to:
 1. Fit the several parts together, to integrate with other Work.
 2. Uncover Work to install or correct ill-timed Work.
 3. Remove and replace defective and non-conforming Work.
 4. Remove samples of installed Work for testing.
 5. Provide openings in elements of Work for penetrations of mechanical and electrical Work.

- D. Execute work by methods to avoid damage to other Work, and to provide proper surfaces to receive patching and finishing.
- E. Cut masonry and concrete materials using masonry saw or core drill.
- F. Restore Work with new products in accordance with requirements of Contract Documents.
- G. Fit Work tight to pipes, sleeves, ducts, conduit, and other penetrations through surfaces.
- H. Maintain integrity of wall, ceiling, or floor construction; completely seal voids.
- I. At penetrations of fire rated walls, partitions, ceiling, or floor construction, completely seal voids with fire rated material, to full thickness of penetrated element.
- J. Refinish or restore surfaces and finished to match existing finishes. For continuous surfaces, refinish to nearest intersection; for assembly, refinish entire unit.
- K. Identify hazardous substances or conditions exposed during the Work to Architect/Engineer for decision or remedy.

3.2 SPECIAL PROCEDURES

- A. Materials: As specified in product sections; match existing with new products and salvaged products for patching and extending work.
- B. Employ skilled and experienced installer to perform alteration work.
- C. Cut, move, or remove items as necessary for access to alterations and renovation Work. Replace and restore at completion.
- D. Remove unsuitable material not marked for salvage, including rotted wood, corroded metals, and deteriorated masonry and concrete. Replace materials as specified for finished Work.
- E. Remove debris and abandoned items from area and from concealed spaces.
- F. Prepare surface and remove surface finishes to permit installation of new work and finishes.
- G. Close openings in exterior surfaces to protect existing work from weather and extremes of temperature and humidity.
- H. Remove, cut, and patch Work in manner to minimize damage and to permit restoring products and finishes to original or specified condition.
- I. Refinish existing visible surfaces to remain in renovated rooms and spaces, to specified condition for each material, with neat transition to adjacent finishes.

- J. Where new Work abuts or aligns with existing, provide smooth and even transition. Patch Work to match existing adjacent Work in texture and appearance.
- K. When finished surfaces are cut so that smooth transition with new Work is not possible, terminate existing surface along straight line at natural line of division and submit recommendation to Architect/Engineer for review.
- L. Where change of plane of 1/4 inch or more occurs, submit recommendation for providing smooth transition; to Architect/Engineer for review.
- M. Patch or replace portions of existing surfaces which are damaged, lifted, discolored, or showing other imperfections.
- N. Finish surfaces as specified in individual product sections.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 33 00

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Submittal procedures.
- B. Construction progress schedules.
- C. Proposed products list.
- D. Product data.
- E. Shop drawings.
- F. Samples.
- G. Design data.
- H. Test reports.
- I. Certificates.
- J. Manufacturer's instructions.
- K. Manufacturer's field reports.

1.2 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Transmit each submittal with shop drawing submittal form found at the end of this section.**
- B. Sequentially number transmittal forms. Mark revised submittals with original number and sequential alphabetic suffix.
- C. Identify Project, Contractor, subcontractor and supplier; pertinent drawing and detail number, and specification section number, appropriate to submittal.
- D. Apply Contractor's stamp, signed or initialed certifying that review, approval, verification of products required, field dimensions, adjacent construction Work, and coordination of information is in accordance with requirements of the Work and Contract Documents.
- E. Schedule submittals to expedite Project, and deliver to Architect/Engineer. Coordinate submission of related items.

- F. For each submittal for review, allow 15 days excluding delivery time to and from Contractor.
- G. Identify variations from Contract Documents and product or system limitations which may be detrimental to successful performance of completed Work.
- H. Allow space on submittals for Contractor and Architect/Engineer review stamps.
- I. When revised for resubmission, identify changes made since previous submission.
- J. Distribute copies of reviewed submittals as appropriate. Instruct parties to promptly report inability to comply with requirements.
- K. Submittals not requested will not be recognized or processed.

1.3 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULES

- A. Submit initial schedules within 15 days after date established in Notice to Proceed. After review, resubmit required revised data within ten days.
- B. Submit revised Progress Schedules with each Application for Payment.
- C. Distribute copies of reviewed schedules to Project site file, subcontractors, suppliers, and other concerned parties.
- D. Instruct recipients to promptly report, in writing, problems anticipated by projections indicated in schedules.
- E. Submit computer generated chart with separate line for each major portion of Work or operation, identifying first work day of each week.
- F. Show complete sequence of construction by activity, identifying Work of separate stages and other logically grouped activities. Indicate early and late start, early and late finish, float dates, and duration.
- G. Indicate estimated percentage of completion for each item of Work at each submission.
- H. Submit separate schedule of submittal dates for shop drawings, product data, and samples, including dates reviewed submittals will be required from Architect/Engineer. Indicate decision dates for selection of finishes.
- I. Revisions To Schedules:
 - 1. Indicate progress of each activity to date of submittal, and projected completion date of each activity.
 - 2. Identify activities modified since previous submittal, major changes in scope, and other identifiable changes.
 - 3. Prepare narrative report to define problem areas, anticipated delays, and impact on Schedule. Report corrective action taken, or proposed, and its effect including effect of changes on schedules of separate contractors.

1.4 PROPOSED PRODUCTS LIST

- A. Within 15 days after date of Notice to Proceed, submit list of major products proposed for use, with name of manufacturer, trade name, and model number of each product.
- B. For products specified only by reference standards, give manufacturer, trade name, model or catalog designation, and reference standards.

1.5 PRODUCT DATA

- A. Product Data: Submit to Architect/Engineer for review for limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and design concept expressed in Contract Documents.
- B. Submit number of copies Contractor requires, plus 3 copies Architect/Engineer will retain.
- C. Mark each copy to identify applicable products, models, options, and other data. Supplement manufacturers' standard data to provide information specific to this Project.
- D. Indicate product utility and electrical characteristics, utility connection requirements, and location of utility outlets for service for functional equipment and appliances.
- E. After review, produce copies and distribute in accordance with SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES article and for record documents described in Section 01 70 00.

1.6 SHOP DRAWINGS

- A. Shop Drawings: Submit to Architect/Engineer for review for limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and design concept expressed in Contract Documents.
- B. Indicate special utility and electrical characteristics, utility connection requirements, and location of utility outlets for service for functional equipment and appliances.
- C. When required by individual specification sections, provide shop drawings signed and sealed by professional engineer responsible for designing components shown on shop drawings.
 - 1. Include signed and sealed calculations to support design.
 - 2. Submit drawings and calculations in form suitable for submission to and approval by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Make revisions and provide additional information when required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Submit number of opaque reproductions Contractor requires, plus 3 copies Architect/Engineer will retain.
- E. After review, produce copies and distribute in accordance with SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES article and for record documents described in Section 01 70 00.

1.7 SAMPLES

- A. Samples: Submit to Architect/Engineer for review for limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and design concept expressed in Contract Documents.
- B. Samples For Selection as Specified in Product Sections:
 - 1. Submit to Architect/Engineer for aesthetic, color, or finish selection.
 - 2. Submit samples of finishes from full range of manufacturers' standard colors, textures, and patterns for Architect/Engineer selection.
- C. Submit samples to illustrate functional and aesthetic characteristics of Products, with integral parts and attachment devices. Coordinate sample submittals for interfacing work.
- D. Include identification on each sample, with full Project information.
- E. Submit number of samples specified in individual specification sections; Architect/Engineer will retain one sample.
- F. Reviewed samples which may be used in the Work are indicated in individual specification sections.
- G. Samples will not be used for testing purposes unless specifically stated in specification section.
- H. After review, produce duplicates and distribute in accordance with SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES article and for record documents purposes described in Section 01 70 00.

1.8 DESIGN DATA

- A. Submit for Architect/Engineer's knowledge as contract administrator or for PHA.
- B. Submit for information for limited purpose of assessing conformance with information given and design concept expressed in Contract Documents.

1.9 TEST REPORTS

- A. Submit for Architect/Engineer's knowledge as contract administrator or for PHA.
- B. Submit test reports for information for limited purpose of assessing conformance with information given and design concept expressed in Contract Documents.

1.10 CERTIFICATES

- A. When specified in individual specification sections, submit certification by manufacturer, installation/application subcontractor, or Contractor to Architect/Engineer, in quantities specified for Product Data.

- B. Indicate material or product conforms to or exceeds specified requirements. Submit supporting reference data, affidavits, and certifications as appropriate.
- C. Certificates may be recent or previous test results on material or Product, but must be acceptable to Architect/Engineer.

1.11 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

- A. When specified in individual specification sections, submit printed instructions for delivery, storage, assembly, installation, start-up, adjusting, and finishing, to Architect/Engineer for delivery to PHA in quantities specified for Product Data.
- B. Indicate special procedures, perimeter conditions requiring special attention, and special environmental criteria required for application or installation.

1.12 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD REPORTS

- A. Submit reports for Architect/Engineer's benefit as contract administrator or for PHA.
- B. Submit report in duplicate within 30 days of observation to Architect/Engineer for information.
- C. Submit for information for limited purpose of assessing conformance with information given and design concept expressed in Contract Documents.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used.

END OF SECTION



SHOP DRAWING SUBMITTAL

PROJECT: Boiler, HVAC and Water Heater Replacements
AMPs 4, 5 and 6
Belleville, Washington Park and New Athens, Illinois
St. Clair Co. Housing Authority
St. Clair County, Illinois
IFB-20-B0001

DATE: _____

A/E PROJECT NO: 280-3159

CONTRACTOR: _____

PRESENTED BY: _____
(Subcontractor/Supplier) _____
Company Name _____
Address _____
Phone/Fax _____
Contact Person _____

ITEM: _____

SPEC SECTION: _____

By approving and submitting these shop drawings, product data and samples, we represent that we have determined and verified all materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and that we have checked and coordinated information contained within submittal with requirements of the work and contract documents.

Contractor's Signature

Date

SECTION 01 40 00
QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Quality control and control of installation.
- B. Tolerances
- C. References.
- D. Testing and inspection services.
- E. Manufacturers' field services.
- F. Examination.
- G. Preparation.

1.2 QUALITY CONTROL AND CONTROL OF INSTALLATION

- A. Monitor quality control over suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, site conditions, and workmanship, to produce Work of specified quality.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' instructions, including each step in sequence.
- C. When manufacturers' instructions conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect/Engineer before proceeding.
- D. Comply with specified standards as minimum quality for the Work except where more stringent tolerances, codes, or specified requirements indicate higher standards or more precise workmanship.
- E. Perform Work by persons qualified to produce required and specified quality.
- F. Verify field measurements are as indicated on Shop Drawings or as instructed by manufacturer.
- G. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, physical distortion, or disfigurement.

1.3 TOLERANCES

- A. Monitor fabrication and installation tolerance control of products to produce acceptable Work. Do not permit tolerances to accumulate.

- B. Comply with manufacturers' tolerances. When manufacturers' tolerances conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect/Engineer before proceeding.
- C. Adjust products to appropriate dimensions; position before securing products in place.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. For products or workmanship specified by association, trade, or other consensus standards, comply with requirements of standard, except when more rigid requirements are specified or are required by applicable codes.
- B. Conform to reference standard by date of issue current on date for receiving bids, except where specific date is established by code.
- C. Obtain copies of standards where required by product specification sections.
- D. When specified reference standards conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect/Engineer before proceeding.
- E. Neither contractual relationships, duties, nor responsibilities of parties in Contract nor those of Architect/Engineer shall be altered from Contract Documents by mention or inference otherwise in reference documents.

1.5 TESTING AND INSPECTION SERVICES

- A. PHA will employ and pay for specified services of an independent firm to perform testing and inspection.
- B. Cooperate with independent firm; furnish samples of materials, design mix, equipment, tools, storage, safe access, and assistance by incidental labor as requested.
- C. Testing and employment of testing agency or laboratory shall not relieve Contractor of obligation to perform Work in accordance with requirements of Contract Documents.
- D. Re-testing or re-inspection required because of non-conformance to specified requirements shall be performed by same independent firm on instructions by Architect/Engineer. Payment for re-testing or re-inspection will be charged to Contractor by deducting testing charges from Contract Sum/Price.

1.6 MANUFACTURERS' FIELD SERVICES

- A. When specified in individual specification sections, require material or product suppliers or manufacturers to provide qualified staff personnel to observe site conditions, conditions of surfaces and installation, quality of workmanship, start-up of equipment, test, adjust and balance of equipment and as applicable, and to initiate instructions when necessary.
- B. Submit qualifications of observer to Architect/Engineer 30 days in advance of required observations. Observer subject to approval of Architect/Engineer and PHA.

- C. Report observations and site decisions or instructions given to applicators or installers that are supplemental or contrary to manufacturers' written instructions.
- D. Refer to Section 01 33 00 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, MANUFACTURERS' FIELD REPORTS article.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing site conditions and substrate surfaces are acceptable for subsequent Work. Beginning new Work means acceptance of existing conditions.
- B. Verify existing substrate is capable of structural support or attachment of new Work being applied or attached.
- C. Examine and verify specific conditions described in individual specification sections.
- D. Verify utility services are available, of correct characteristics, and in correct locations.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate surfaces prior to applying next material or substance.
- B. Seal cracks or openings of substrate prior to applying next material or substance.
- C. Apply manufacturer required or recommended substrate primer, sealer, or conditioner prior to applying new material or substance in contact or bond.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 50 00

TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Temporary Utilities:
 - 1. Temporary electricity.
 - 2. Temporary lighting for construction purposes.
 - 3. Temporary ventilation.
 - 4. Temporary water service.
 - 5. Temporary sanitary facilities.
- B. Construction Facilities:
 - 1. Vehicular access.
 - 2. Parking.
 - 3. Progress cleaning and waste removal.
- C. Temporary Controls:
 - 1. Barriers.
 - 2. Enclosures and fencing.
 - 3. Dust control.
 - 4. Pollution control.
- D. Removal of utilities, facilities, and controls.

1.2 TEMPORARY ELECTRICITY

- A. PHA will pay cost of energy used. Exercise measures to conserve energy. Utilize PHA's existing power service where available.
- B. Provide temporary electric feeder from existing building electrical service as required for construction operations. Do not disrupt PHA's use of service.
- C. Complement existing power service capacity and characteristics as required for construction operations.

1.3 TEMPORARY LIGHTING FOR CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES

- A. Provide and maintain lighting as necessary for construction operations.
- B. Maintain lighting and provide routine repairs.
- C. Permanent building lighting may be utilized during construction.

1.4 TEMPORARY VENTILATION

- A. Ventilate enclosed areas to achieve curing of materials, to dissipate humidity, and to prevent accumulation of dust, fumes, vapors, or gases.
- B. Utilize existing ventilation equipment. Extend and supplement equipment with temporary fan units as required to maintain clean air for construction operations.

1.5 TEMPORARY WATER SERVICE

- A. Provide and pay for suitable quality water service as needed to maintain specified conditions for construction operations. Connect to existing water source where available as directed by the PHA.

1.6 TEMPORARY SANITARY FACILITIES

- A. Provide and maintain required facilities and enclosures. Existing facility use is not permitted. Provide facilities at time of project mobilization.

1.7 VEHICULAR ACCESS

- A. Location as approved by PHA.
- B. Provide unimpeded access for emergency vehicles.
- C. Provide and maintain access to fire hydrants and control valves free of obstructions.
- D. Use existing on-site roads for construction traffic as directed by the PHA.

1.8 PARKING

- A. Use of designated existing on-site streets and driveways used for construction traffic is permitted, as directed by the PHA.
- B. Use of designated areas of existing parking facilities used by construction personnel is permitted, as directed by the PHA.
- C. Do not allow heavy vehicles or construction equipment in parking areas.
- D. Maintenance:
 - 1. Maintain traffic and parking areas in sound condition free of excavated material, construction equipment, products, mud, snow, and ice.
 - 2. Maintain existing and permanent paved areas used for construction; promptly repair breaks, potholes, low areas, standing water, and other deficiencies, to maintain paving and drainage in original, or specified, condition.
- E. Removal, Repair:
 - 1. Repair existing facilities damaged by use, to original condition.

1.9 PROGRESS CLEANING AND WASTE REMOVAL

- A. Maintain areas free of waste materials, debris, and rubbish. Maintain site in clean and orderly condition.
- B. Remove debris and rubbish from pipe chases, plenums, attics, crawl spaces, and other closed or remote spaces, prior to enclosing spaces.
- C. Broom and vacuum clean interior areas prior to start of surface finishing, and continue cleaning to eliminate dust.
- D. Collect and remove waste materials, debris, and rubbish from site and dispose off-site.

1.10 BARRIERS

- A. Provide barriers to prevent unauthorized entry to construction areas to allow for PHA's use of site, and to protect existing facilities and adjacent properties from damage from construction operations and demolition.
- B. Provide barricades and covered walkways required by authorities having jurisdiction for public rights-of-way and for public access to existing building.
- C. Provide protection for plants designated to remain. Replace damaged plants.
- D. Protect non-owned vehicular traffic, stored materials, site, and structures from damage.

1.11 ENCLOSURES AND FENCING

- A. Exterior Enclosures:
 - 1. Provide temporary weather tight closure of exterior openings to accommodate acceptable working conditions and protection for products, to allow for temporary heating and maintenance of required ambient temperatures identified in individual specification sections, and to prevent entry of unauthorized persons. Provide access doors with self-closing hardware and locks.
- B. Interior Enclosures:
 - 1. Provide temporary partitions as necessary, to prevent penetration of dust and moisture into PHA occupied areas, and to prevent damage to existing materials and equipment.

1.12 DUST CONTROL

- A. Execute Work by methods to minimize raising dust from construction operations.
- B. Provide positive means to prevent air-borne dust from dispersing into atmosphere.

1.13 POLLUTION CONTROL

- A. Provide methods, means, and facilities to prevent contamination of soil, water, and atmosphere from discharge of noxious, toxic substances, and pollutants produced by construction operations.
- B. Comply with pollution and environmental control requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.14 REMOVAL OF UTILITIES, FACILITIES, AND CONTROLS

- A. Remove temporary utilities, equipment, facilities, materials, prior to Substantial Completion inspection.
- B. Clean and repair damage caused by installation or use of temporary work.
- C. Restore existing and permanent facilities used during construction to original condition.
Restore permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 60 00
PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Products.
- B. Product delivery requirements.
- C. Product storage and handling requirements.
- D. Product options.
- E. Product substitution procedures.
- F. Equipment electrical characteristics and components.

1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Furnish products of qualified manufacturers suitable for intended use. Furnish products of each type by single manufacturer unless specified otherwise.
- B. Do not use materials and equipment removed from existing premises, except as specifically permitted by Contract Documents.
- C. Furnish interchangeable components from same manufacturer for components being replaced.

1.3 PRODUCT DELIVERY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Transport and handle products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Promptly inspect shipments to ensure products comply with requirements, quantities are correct, and products are undamaged.
- C. Provide equipment and personnel to handle products by methods to prevent soiling, disfigurement, or damage.

1.4 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Store and protect products in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.
- B. Store with seals and labels intact and legible.
- C. Store sensitive products in weather tight, climate controlled, enclosures in an environment favorable to product.

- D. For exterior storage of fabricated products, place on sloped supports above ground.
- E. Provide bonded off-site storage and protection when site does not permit on-site storage or protection.
- F. Cover products subject to deterioration with impervious sheet covering. Provide ventilation to prevent condensation and degradation of products.
- G. Store loose granular materials on solid flat surfaces in well-drained area. Prevent mixing with foreign matter.
- H. Provide equipment and personnel to store products by methods to prevent soiling, disfigurement, or damage.
- I. Arrange storage of products to permit access for inspection. Periodically inspect to verify products are undamaged and are maintained in acceptable condition.

1.5 PRODUCT OPTIONS

- A. Products Specified by Reference Standards or by Description Only: Any product meeting those standards or description.
- B. Products Specified by Naming One or More Manufacturers with Provision for Substitutions: Submit request for substitution for any manufacturer not named in accordance with the following article.

1.6 PRODUCT SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

- A. Substitutions may be considered when a product becomes unavailable through no fault of Contractor.
- B. Document each request with complete data substantiating compliance of proposed Substitution with Contract Documents.
- C. A request constitutes a representation that Bidder:
 - 1. Has investigated proposed product and determined that it meets or exceeds quality level of specified product.
 - 2. Will provide same warranty for Substitution as for specified product.
 - 3. Will coordinate installation and make changes to other Work which may be required for the Work to be complete with no additional cost to PHA.
 - 4. Waives claims for additional costs or time extension which may subsequently become apparent.
 - 5. Will reimburse PHA and Architect/Engineer for review or redesign services associated with re-approval by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Substitutions will not be considered when they are indicated or implied on Shop Drawing or Product Data submittals, without separate written request, or when acceptance will require revision to Contract Documents.

E. Substitution Submittal Procedure:

1. Submit three copies of request for Substitution for consideration. Limit each request to one proposed Substitution.
2. Submit Shop Drawings, Product Data, and certified test results attesting to proposed product equivalence. Burden of proof is on proposer.
3. Architect/Engineer will notify Contractor in writing of decision to accept or reject request.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS AND COMPONENTS

- A. Wiring Terminations: Furnish terminal lugs to match branch circuit conductor quantities, sizes, and materials indicated. Include lugs for terminal box.
- B. Cord and Plug: Furnish minimum 6 foot cord and plug including grounding connector for connection to electric wiring system. Cord of longer length is specified in individual specification sections.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 70 00

EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Closeout procedures.
- B. Final cleaning.
- C. Protecting installed construction.
- D. Project record documents.
- E. Operation and maintenance data.
- F. Manual for materials and finishes.
- G. Spare parts and maintenance products.
- H. Product warranties and product bonds.
- I. Maintenance service.

1.2 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Submit written certification that Contract Documents have been reviewed, Work has been inspected, and that Work is complete in accordance with Contract Documents and ready for Architect/Engineer's review.
- B. Provide submittals to Architect/Engineer required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Submit final Application for Payment identifying total adjusted Contract Sum, previous payments, and sum remaining due. Including:
 - 1. Contractor's Notarized Final Waivers of Lien for full amount of contract.
 - 2. List of all subcontractors and major material suppliers and their final contract amount and notarized Final Waivers of Lien for the full amount.
 - 3. Consent of Surety Company to Final Payment (AIA Document G707).
 - 4. All written guarantees related to materials incorporated into project.
 - 5. Contractor's Certificate and Release, form in exact text as furnished by PHA, signed by Contractor.
- D. The PHA will process final statement in accord with conditions of the Contract.

1.3 FINAL CLEANING

- A. Execute final cleaning prior to final project assessment.
- B. Clean interior and exterior glass, surfaces exposed to view; remove temporary labels, stains and foreign substances, polish transparent and glossy surfaces, vacuum carpeted and soft surfaces.
- C. Clean equipment and fixtures to sanitary condition with cleaning materials appropriate to surface and material being cleaned.
- D. Replace filters of operating equipment.
- E. Clean construction debris from roofs, gutters, downspouts, and drainage systems.
- F. Clean construction debris from site; sweep paved areas, rake clean landscaped surfaces.
- G. Remove waste and surplus materials, rubbish, and construction facilities from site.

1.4 PROTECTING INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Protect installed Work and provide special protection where specified in individual specification sections.
- B. Provide temporary and removable protection for installed products. Control activity in immediate work area to prevent damage.
- C. Provide protective coverings at walls, projections, jambs, sills, and soffits of openings.
- D. Protect finished floors, stairs, and other surfaces from traffic, dirt, wear, damage, or movement of heavy objects, by protecting with durable sheet materials.
- E. Prohibit traffic or storage upon waterproofed or roofed surfaces. When traffic or activity is necessary, obtain recommendations for protection from waterproofing or roofing material manufacturer.
- F. Prohibit traffic from landscaped areas.

1.5 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintain on site one set of the following record documents; record actual revisions to the Work:
 - 1. Drawings.
 - 2. Specifications.
 - 3. Addenda.
 - 4. Change Orders and other modifications to the Contract.
 - 5. Reviewed Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples.
 - 6. Manufacturer's instruction for assembly, installation, and adjusting.

- B. Ensure entries are complete and accurate, enabling future reference by PHA.
- C. Store record documents separate from documents used for construction.
- D. Record information concurrent with construction progress, not less than weekly.
- E. Specifications: Legibly mark and record at each product section description of actual products installed, including the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's name and product model and number.
 - 2. Product substitutions or alternates utilized.
 - 3. Changes made by Addenda and modifications.
- F. Record Drawings: Legibly mark each item to record actual construction including:
 - 1. Measured locations of internal utilities and appurtenances concealed in construction, referenced to visible and accessible features of the Work.
 - 2. Field changes of dimension and detail.
 - 3. Details not on original Contract drawings.
- G. Submit documents to Architect/Engineer with claim for final Application for Payment.

1.6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Submit data bound in 8-1/2 x 11 inch (A4) text pages, three D side ring binders with durable plastic covers.
- B. Prepare binder cover with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS", title of project.
- C. Internally subdivide binder contents with permanent page dividers, logically organized as described below; with tab titling clearly printed under reinforced laminated plastic tabs.
- D. Drawings: Provide with reinforced punched binder tab. Bind in with text; fold larger drawings to size of text pages.
- E. Contents: Prepare Table of Contents for each volume, with each product or system description identified, typed on white paper, in three parts as follows:
 - 1. Part 1: Directory, listing names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Architect/Engineer, Contractor, Subcontractors, and major equipment suppliers.
 - 2. Part 2: Operation and maintenance instructions, arranged by system and subdivided by specification section. For each category, identify names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Subcontractors and suppliers. Identify the following:
 - a. Significant design criteria.
 - b. List of equipment.
 - c. Parts list for each component.
 - d. Operating instructions.
 - e. Maintenance instructions for equipment and systems.

- f. Maintenance instructions for special finishes, including recommended cleaning methods and materials, and special precautions identifying detrimental agents.
3. Part 3: Project documents and certificates, including the following:
 - a. Shop drawings and product data.
 - b. Air and water balance reports.
 - c. Certificates.
 - d. Originals of warranties.

1.7 MANUAL FOR MATERIALS AND FINISHES

- A. For equipment, or component parts of equipment put into service during construction and operated by PHA, submit documents within ten days after acceptance.
- B. Building Products, Applied Materials, and Finishes: Include product data, with catalog number, size, composition, and color and texture designations. Include information for re-ordering custom manufactured products.
- C. Instructions for Care and Maintenance: Include manufacturer's recommendations for cleaning agents and methods, precautions against detrimental agents and methods, and recommended schedule for cleaning and maintenance.
- D. Moisture Protection and Weather Exposed Products: Include product data listing applicable reference standards, chemical composition, and details of installation. Include recommendations for inspections, maintenance, and repair.
- E. Additional Requirements: As specified in individual product specification sections.
- F. Include listing in Table of Contents for design data, with tabbed fly sheet and space for insertion of data.

1.8 SPARE PARTS AND MAINTENANCE PRODUCTS

- A. Furnish spare parts, maintenance, and extra products in quantities specified in individual specification sections.
- B. Deliver to Project site and place in location as directed by PHA; obtain receipt prior to final payment.

1.9 PRODUCT WARRANTIES AND PRODUCT BONDS

- A. Obtain warranties and bonds executed in duplicate by responsible subcontractors, suppliers, and manufacturers, within ten days after completion of applicable item of work.
- B. Execute and assemble transferable warranty documents and bonds from subcontractors, suppliers, and manufacturers.
- C. Verify documents are in proper form, contain full information, and are notarized.

- D. Co-execute submittals when required.
- E. Submit prior to final Application for Payment.
- F. Time of Submittals:
 - 1. For equipment or component parts of equipment put into service during construction with PHA's permission, submit documents within ten days after acceptance.
 - 2. For items of Work for which acceptance is delayed beyond Date of Substantial Completion, submit within ten days after acceptance, listing date of acceptance as beginning of warranty or bond period.

1.10 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Furnish service and maintenance of components indicated in specification sections.
- B. Examine system components at frequency consistent with reliable operation. Clean, adjust, and lubricate as required.
- C. Include systematic examination, adjustment, and lubrication of components. Repair or replace parts whenever required. Use parts produced by manufacturer of original component.
- D. Do not assign or transfer maintenance service to agent or Subcontractor without prior written consent of PHA.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 17

SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.
6. Silicone sealants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop collar.
- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, **anticorrosion coated or galvanized**, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- D. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

- E. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured, **Dura-coated or Duco-coated** or **galvanized** cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

- 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description:

- 1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig minimum.
 - 3. Sealing Elements: **EPDM-rubber** or **High-temperature-silicone** or **Nitrile (Buna N)** interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 4. Pressure Plates: **Carbon steel** or **Composite plastic** or **Stainless steel** or **Stainless steel, Type 316**.
 - 5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: **Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B 633** or **Stainless steel** or **Stainless steel, Type 316** of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.
- B. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.6 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
- B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide **1-inch** annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas **2 inches** above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using **grout or silicone sealant**, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with

requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 5. Use silicone sealant to seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Use **grout or silicone sealant** to seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6**: **Cast-iron pipe sleeves or Steel pipe sleeves or Sleeve-seal fittings**.
 - b. Piping **NPS 6** and Larger: **Cast-iron pipe sleeves or Steel pipe sleeves or Sleeve-seal fittings**.
 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6**: **Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Sleeve-seal fittings**.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch** annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping **NPS 6** and Larger: **Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Sleeve-seal fittings**.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch** annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6**: **Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Sleeve-seal fittings**.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch** annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping **NPS 6** and Larger: **Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Sleeve-seal fittings**.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch** annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6**: **Steel pipe sleeves or PVC pipe sleeves or Stack-sleeve fittings or Sleeve-seal fittings or Molded-PE or -PP sleeves or Molded-PVC sleeves**.

- b. Piping **NPS 6** and Larger: **Steel pipe sleeves or PVC pipe sleeves or Stack-sleeve fittings.**
- 5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6**: **Steel pipe sleeves or PVC pipe sleeves.**
 - b. Piping **NPS 6** and Larger: **Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.**

END OF SECTION 220517

SECTION 22 05 29

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
4. Metal framing systems.
5. Fiberglass strut systems.
6. Thermal hanger-shield inserts.
7. Fastener systems.
8. Pipe stands.
9. Pipe-positioning systems.
10. Equipment supports.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 2. Metal framing systems.
 3. Fiberglass strut systems.
 4. Pipe stands.
 5. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
 2. Include design calculations for designing trapeze hangers.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2015 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.
 - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
 - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment **and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction**.

2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

- 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
- 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
- 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated or epoxy powder coated.
- 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
- 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of **carbon steel or stainless steel**.

- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

- 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
- 2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
- 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of **stainless steel**.

C. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of **copper-coated steel or stainless steel**.

2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes, with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.4 FIBERGLASS PIPE HANGERS

A. Clevis-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 1 steel pipe hanger, except hanger is made of fiberglass or fiberglass-reinforced resin.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of **fiberglass or polyurethane or stainless steel**.
3. Flammability: ASTM D 635, ASTM E 84, UL 94.

B. Strap-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 9 or Type 10 steel pipe hanger, except hanger is made of fiberglass-reinforced resin.
 - a. Flammability: ASTM D 635, ASTM E 84, UL 94.
2. Hanger Rod and Fittings: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of **stainless steel**.

2.5 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
3. Channels: Continuous slotted **carbon-steel or stainless-steel, Type 304 or stainless-steel, Type 316 or extruded-aluminum** channel with turned lips.
4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of **carbon steel or stainless steel**.
7. Metallic Coating: **No coating or Plain or Pregalvanized G90 or Electroplated zinc or Hot-dip galvanized or Gold (yellow zinc dichromate) galvanized**.

8. Paint Coating: **Green epoxy, acrylic, or urethane.**
 9. Plastic Coating: **PVC.**
- B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 3. Channels: Continuous slotted **carbon-steel** or **stainless-steel** channel with inturned lips.
 4. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of **carbon steel** or **stainless steel**.
 7. Metallic Coating: **No coating or Plain or Pregalvanized G90 or Hot-dip galvanized**
 8. Paint Coating: **Green epoxy, acrylic, or urethane.**
 9. Plastic Coating: **PVC.**

2.6 FIBERGLASS STRUT SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 2. Channels: Continuous slotted fiberglass-reinforced plastic channel with inturned lips.
 3. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
 4. Fittings and Accessories: Products provided by channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
 5. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as those for channels and angles, **except metal items may be stainless steel.**
 6. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.
 7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

2.7 THERMAL HANGER-SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: **ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig** minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: **Water-repellent-treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig** minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.8 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Indoor Applications: **Zinc-coated or stainless** steel.
 - 2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

2.9 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Single base unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
 - 3. Hardware: Galvanized steel or polycarbonate.
 - 4. Accessories: Protection pads.
- C. Low-Profile, Single-Base, Single-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Single base with vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane protection.
 - 2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two **galvanized** or **stainless**-steel, continuous-thread, 1/2-inch rods.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Adjustable horizontal, **galvanized** or **stainless**-steel pipe support channels.
 - 5. Pipe Supports: **Roller or Strut clamps** or **Clevis hanger** or **Swivel hanger**.
 - 6. Hardware: **Galvanized** or **Stainless** steel.
 - 7. Accessories: Protection pads.
 - 8. Height: **12 inches above roof**
- D. High-Profile, Single-Base, Single-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Single base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Single vulcanized rubber or molded polypropylene.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two **galvanized** or **stainless**-steel, continuous-thread, 1/2-inch rods.

4. Horizontal Member: One adjustable-height, **galvanized- or stainless**-steel, pipe-support slotted channel or plate.
 5. Pipe Supports: **Roller** or **Clevis hanger** or **Swivel hanger**.
 6. Hardware: **Galvanized** or **Stainless** steel.
 7. Accessories: Protection pads **1/2-inch, continuous-thread, galvanized-steel rod** or, **1/2-inch, continuous-thread, stainless-steel rod**.
 8. Height: **36 inches above roof**.
- E. High-Profile, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 2. Bases: Two or more; **vulcanized rubber** or **molded polypropylene**.
 - a.
 3. Vertical Members: Two or more, **galvanized** or **stainless**-steel channels.
 4. Horizontal Members: One or more, adjustable-height, **galvanized** or **stainless**-steel pipe support.
 5. Pipe Supports: **Roller** or **Strut clamps** or **Clevis hanger** or **Swivel hanger**.
 6. Hardware: **Galvanized** or **Stainless** steel.
 7. Accessories: Protection pads **1/2-inch, continuous-thread rod**.
 8. Height: **36 inches above roof**.
- F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.10 PIPE-POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42 positioning system composed of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.11 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

2.12 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M.

- E. Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus **200 lb**.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-58. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- D. **Metal or Fiberglass** Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- E. Thermal Hanger-Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- F. Fastener System Installation:
 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Pipe Stand Installation:

1. Pipe Stand Types, except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

H. Pipe-Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.

- I. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- J. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- K. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- L. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- M. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, **NPS 2-1/2** and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms, and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- N. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- O. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- P. Insulated Piping:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.

- a. Piping Operating Above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
- b. Piping Operating Below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal hanger-shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
- c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39 protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.

- a. Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40 protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal Hanger Shields: Install with insulation of same thickness as piping insulation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for **trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports**.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. Finish welds at exposed connections, so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to **1-1/2 inches**.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel **pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems** and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use **stainless-steel pipe hangers and fiberglass pipe hangers and fiberglass strut systems** and **stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant** attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and **copper or stainless-steel** attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal hanger-shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.

2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs.
 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs.
 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs but vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs and vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation, in addition to expansion and contraction, is required.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.

2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment of up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11 split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal Hanger-Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use **powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors** instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- S. Use pipe-positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 07 19
PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:

1. Domestic cold-water piping.
2. Domestic hot-water piping.
3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
4. Domestic chilled-water piping for drinking fountains.
5. Sanitary waste piping exposed to freezing conditions.
6. Storm-water piping exposed to freezing conditions.
7. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
8. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 220716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation" for equipment insulation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come into contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Comply with ASTM C552.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type II, Class 1, without jacket.
 - 2. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type II, Class 2, with factory-applied **ASJ** or **ASJ-SSL** jacket.
 - 3. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 - 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type I for tubular materials.
- H. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C547.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type I, Grade A **without factory-applied jacket or with factory-applied ASJ or with factory-applied ASJ-SSL**.
 - 2. 850 deg F.
 - 3. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 - 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- I. Phenolic: Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C1126.

1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type III, **without factory-applied jacket or with factory-applied ASJ**.
 2. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 3. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- J. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M or ASTM C1427, Type I, Grade 1, for tubular materials.

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Solvent-based adhesive.
 1. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 2. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F.
 3. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F.
 4. Color: **Black**
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- E. Phenolic Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.
- F. ASJ Adhesive and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A, for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

2.3 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 2. Service Temperature Range: **0 to plus 180 deg F Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F**.
 3. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements **with supplier listing on DOD QPD - Qualified Products Database**.
 4. Color: **White**
- C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Indoor Use: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
 3. Color: **White**

- D. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Outdoor Use: Suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
 - 3. Color: **White**
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96/E96M, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: **0 to plus 180 deg F Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.**
 - 3. Color: **White**

2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Adhesives shall comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: **20 to plus 180 deg F 0 to plus 180 deg F.**
 - 3. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

- A. Materials shall be as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Joint Sealants:
 - 1. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 58 to plus 176 deg F Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.**
 - 3. Color: White or gray.
- C. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 3. Color: Aluminum.
- D. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 2. Color: **[White] [Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect].**
 3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- D. Metal Jacket:
 1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. **Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing or Factory cut and rolled to size.**
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: **1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.**

- d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: **3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.**
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
2. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A240/A240M.
- a. **[Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing] [Factory cut and rolled to size].**
 - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: **1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.**
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: **3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.**
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- E. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil-thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane, consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
- F. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross-laminated polyethylene film covered with **white or stucco-embossed** aluminum-foil facing.

2.10 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: **3 inches**
 - 2. Thickness: **11.5 mils**
 - 3. Adhesion: **90 ounces force/inch** in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: **40 lbf/inch** in width.
 - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.11 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, **Type 304 or Type 316**; 0.015 inch thick, **1/2 inch 3/4 inch** wide with **wing seal or closed seal**.
 - 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, **1/2 inch 3/4 inch** wide with **wing seal or closed seal**.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: **0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy or 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel or 0.062-inch soft-annealed, galvanized steel**.

2.12 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

- A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers,
 - 1. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture **hot- and cold-water supplies** and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.
- B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures,
 - 1. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range of between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature of between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the tradesman installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward-clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.

- a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 25 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least **4 inches** beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 4. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.

- 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
- 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
- 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, Mechanical Couplings, and Unions:
 - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, mechanical couplings, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using **preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings** made from same material and density as that of adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 - 3. Insulate tee fittings with **preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation** of same material and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 - 4. Insulate valves using **preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation** of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 - 5. Insulate strainers using **preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation** of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers, so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced

- without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges, mechanical couplings, and unions, using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union" matching size and color of pipe labels.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket, except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing, using PVC tape.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as that of adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union at least 2 times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.

3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.

2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as that of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF PHENOLIC INSULATION

A. General Installation Requirements:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as that of pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF POLYOLEFIN INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.11 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.12 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
1. Flat Acrylic Finish: **Two** finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative** as needed.

- E. Tests and Inspections: Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to **three** locations of straight pipe, **three** locations of threaded fittings, **three** locations of welded fittings, **two** locations of threaded strainers, **two** locations of welded strainers, **three** locations of threaded valves, and **three** locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- F. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.14 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.15 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Fluid Operating Temperature Range below 40 Deg F:
 - 1. Minimum insulation thickness with k value **0.20-0.26 ((Btu*in)/(h*ft^2*F)):**
 - a. **NPS less than 1 inch: 1/2 inchesthick.**
 - b. **NPS 1 inch to less than 8 inches: 1 inchthick.**
 - c. **NPS 8 inches or greater: 1 1/2 inchthick.**
- B. Fluid Operating Temperature from **40 Deg F to 60 deg F:**
 - 1. Minimum insulation thickness with k value **0.21-0.27 ((Btu*in)/(h*ft^2*F)):**
 - a. **NPS less than 1 1/2 inches: 1/2 inchesthick**
 - b. **NPS 1 1/2 inches or greater: 1 inchthick**
- C. Fluid Operating Temperature from **105 Deg F to 140 deg F:**
 - 1. Minimum insulation thickness with k value **0.21-0.28 ((Btu*in)/(h*ft^2*F)):**
 - a. **NPS less than 1 1/2 inches: 1 inchthick**
 - b. **NPS 1 1/2 inches or greater: 1-1/2 inchesthick**
- D. Fluid Operating Temperature from **141 Deg F to 200 deg F:**

1. Minimum insulation thickness with k value 0.25-0.29 ((Btu*in)/(h*ft^2*F)):
 - a. **NPS less than 1 1/2 inches: 1-1/2 inches thick**
 - b. **NPS 1 1/2 inches or greater: 2 inches thick**

- E. Fluid Operating Temperature from 201 Deg F to 250 deg F:
 1. Minimum insulation thickness with k value 0.27-0.30 ((Btu*in)/(h*ft^2*F)):
 - a. **NPS less than 4 inches: 2-1/2 inchesthick**
 - b. **NPS 4 inches or greater: 3 inchesthick**

- F. Fluid Operating Temperature from 251 Deg F to 350 deg F:
 1. Minimum insulation thickness with k value 0.29-0.32 ((Btu*in)/(h*ft^2*F)):
 - a. **NPS less than 1 inch: 3 inchesthick**
 - b. **NPS 1 inch to less than 1-1/2 inches: 4 inchesthick**
 - c. **NPS 1-1/2 inches and greater: 4-1/2 inchesthick**

- G. Fluid Operating Temperature from greater than 350 deg F:
 1. Minimum insulation thickness with k value 0.32-0.34 ((Btu*in)/(h*ft^2*F)):
 - a. **NPS less than 1 inch: 4-1/2 inchesthick**
 - b. **NPS 1 inch and greater: 5 inchesthick**

- H. For insulation outside the state conductivity range, the minimum thickness (T) shall be as follows
 1. $T = r\{(1+t/r)K/k-1\}$
 - a. T = minimum insulation thickness
 - b. r = actual outside radius of pipe
 - c. t = insulation thickness listed for applicable fluid temperature and pipe size
 - d. K = conductivity of alternate material at mean rating temperature indicate for the applicable fluid temperature
 - e. k = the upper value of the conductivity range listed in the table for the applicable fluid temperature

3.16 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

- C. Piping, Concealed:
 1. None.
 2. **PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils 30 mils thick.**
 3. **Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch or 0.032 inch or 0.040 inch thick.**

4. Painted Aluminum, **Smooth or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch or 0.032 inch** thick.
 5. Stainless Steel, **Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth No. 2B Finish or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.010 inch or 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch** thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
1. PVC: **20 mils or 30 mils or 40 mils** thick.
 2. Aluminum, **Smooth or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed or with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch or 0.032 inch or 0.040 inch** thick.
 3. Stainless Steel, **Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth No. 2B Finish or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed or with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.010 inch or 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch** thick.

3.17 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-APPLIED INSULATION JACKET

- A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 11 16
DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Copper tube and fittings.
2. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
3. Galvanized-steel pipe and fittings.
4. Stainless steel piping and fittings.
5. CPVC piping.
6. PEX tube and fittings.
7. PEX-AL-PEX tube and fittings.
8. PEX-AL-HDPE tube and fittings.
9. PVC pipe and fittings.
10. PP-R pipe and fittings.
11. Piping joining materials.
12. Encasement for piping.
13. Transition fittings.
14. Dielectric fittings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:

1. Pipe and tube.
2. Fittings.
3. Joining materials.
4. Transition fittings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. System purging and disinfecting activities report.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify **Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner** no fewer than **two** days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
 2. Do not interrupt water service without **Architect's, Construction Manager's and Owner's** written permission.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Polypropylene Piping (PP-R) Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace PP-R pipe and fittings that fail in materials or workmanship within 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 1. Warranty is to cover labor and material costs of repairing and/or replacing defective materials and repairing any incidental damage caused by failure of the piping system due to defects in materials or manufacturing.
 2. Warranty is to be in effect only upon submission by the Contractor to the manufacturer of valid pressure/leak documentation indicating that the system was tested and passed the manufacturer's pressure/leak test.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14, NSF 61, and NSF 372. **Include marking "NSF-pw" on piping.**

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: **ASTM B88, Type K or ASTM B88, Type L and ASTM B88, Type M.**
- B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: **ASTM B88, Type K or ASTM B88, Type L and ASTM B88, Type M.**
- C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, pressure fittings.
- E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.

- F. Cast Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- G. Wrought Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- H. Copper-Tube, Mechanically Formed Tee Fitting: For forming T-branch on copper water tube.
 - 1. Description: Tee formed in copper tube in accordance with ASTM F2014.
- I. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Copper Tube Appurtenances:
 - 1. Grooved-End, Copper Fittings: ASTM B75 copper tube or ASTM B584 bronze castings.
 - 2. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: To fit copper-tube dimensions; rigid pattern unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting, EPDM-rubber gasket, UL classified per NSF 61 and NSF 372, and rated for minimum **180 deg F**, for use with ferrous housing and steel bolts and nuts; 300 psig minimum CWP pressure rating.
- J. Copper Tube, Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Fittings: Cast-brass, cast-bronze, or wrought-copper with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
 - 2. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.
- K. Copper-Tube, Push-on-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Cast-copper fitting complying with ASME B16.18 or wrought-copper fitting complying with ASME B 16.22.
 - b. Stainless steel teeth and EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end instead of solder-joint ends.

2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
 - 1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
 - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
 - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- D. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
 - 1. AWWA C151/A21.51.

2. Push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.

E. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

F. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

G. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51.

H. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. Fittings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions that match pipe.
2. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping:

- a. AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions.
- b. Ferrous housing sections.
- c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
- d. Bolts and nuts.
- e. Minimum Pressure Rating:

- 1) NPS 14 to NPS 18: **250 psig**.
- 2) NPS 20 to NPS 46: **150 psig**.

2.4 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe:

1. ASTM A53/A53M, **Type E or Grade B**, Standard Weight.
2. Include ends matching joining method.

B. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A733, made of ASTM A53/A53M or ASTM A106/A106M, Standard Weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.

C. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

D. Malleable-Iron Unions:

1. ASME B16.39, Class 150.
2. Hexagonal-stock body.
3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface.
4. Threaded ends.

E. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.

F. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:

1. ASTM Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Galvanized, ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A106/A106M, steel pipe; or ASTM A536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
2. AWWA Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
 - a. AWWA C606 for steel-pipe dimensions.
 - b. Ferrous housing sections.
 - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
 - d. Bolts and nuts.
 - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
 - 1) NPS 8 and Smaller: **600 psig**
 - 2) NPS 10 and NPS 12: **400 psig**
 - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24: **250 psig**

2.5 STAINLESS STEEL PIPING

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.
- B. Stainless Steel Pipe: ASTM A312/A312M, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Stainless Steel Pipe Fittings: ASTM A815/A815M.
- D. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Stainless Steel Pipe:
 1. Fittings for Grooved-End, Stainless Steel Pipe: Stainless steel casting with dimensions matching stainless steel pipe.
 2. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Stainless Steel Pipe:
 - a. AWWA C606 for stainless steel-pipe dimensions.
 - b. Stainless steel housing sections.
 - c. Stainless steel bolts and nuts.
 - d. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
 - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
 - 1) NPS 8 and Smaller: **600 psig**.
 - 2) NPS 10 and NPS 12: **400 psig**.
 - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24: **250 psig**.
- E. Stainless Steel Piping , Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
 1. Material: Type 316 stainless steel, ASTM A312/A312M, Schedule 10.
 2. Fittings: Type 316 stainless steel with EPDM O-ring seal in each end, and approved for potable water applications.
 3. Listing: ICC-ES LC1002 or UL Classified in accordance with ANSI/NSF 61 and 372.
 4. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.

2.6 CPVC PIPING

- A. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F441/F441M, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
 - 1. CPVC Socket Fittings: **ASTM F438 for Schedule 40 and ASTM F439 for Schedule 80.**
 - 2. CPVC Threaded Fittings: ASTM F437, Schedule 80.
- B. CPVC Piping System: ASTM D2846/D2846M, SDR 11, pipe and socket fittings.
- C. CPVC Tubing System: ASTM D2846/D2846M, SDR 11, tube and socket fittings.

2.7 PEX TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Tube Material: PEX plastic according to ASTM F876
- B. Fittings: **ASTM F1807, metal insert and copper crimp rings or ASTM F1960, cold expansion fittings and reinforcing rings.**
- C. Push-Fit Fittings: ASSE 1061, push-fit fittings.
- D. Manifold: Multiple-outlet, plastic or corrosion-resistant-metal assembly complying with ASTM F876; with plastic or corrosion-resistant-metal valve for each outlet.

2.8 PEX-AL-PEX TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Tube Material: PEX plastic bonded to the inside and outside of a welded aluminum tube according to ASTM F1281.
- B. Oxygen Barrier: Limit oxygen diffusion through the pipe to maximum 0.10 mg per cu. m/day at 104 deg F according to DIN 4726.
- C. Fittings: ASTM F1974, metal insert fittings with split ring and compression nut (compression joint) or metal insert fittings with copper crimp rings (crimp joint).

2.9 PEX-AL-HDPE TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Tube Material: ASTM F1986 tubing.
- B. Fittings for PEX-AL-HDPE Tube: ASTM F1986, metal-insert type with copper or stainless-steel crimp ring and matching PEX-AL-HDPE tube dimensions.

2.10 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Pipe: ASTM D1785, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

- B. PVC Socket Fittings: **ASTM D2466 for Schedule 40 and ASTM D2467 for Schedule 80.**
- C. PVC Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D2464.

2.11 POLYPROPYLENE (PP-R) PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Polypropylene Pipe: ASTM F2389, pipe pressure rating to comply with temperature and pressure ratings of code requirements for the applicable service.
 - 1. Polypropylene Fittings: ASTM F2389, socket fusion, butt fusion, electrofusion, or fusion outlet fittings to be used for fusion-welded joints between pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Mechanical fittings and transition fittings to be used where transitions are made to other piping materials or to valves and appurtenances.
 - 3. Polypropylene pipe is to be unthreaded. Threaded transition fittings per ASTM F2389 to be used where a threaded connection is required.
- B. Smoke and Fire Ratings:
 - 1. Where indicated on the Drawings that a plenum-rated piping system is required, the pipe is to be wrapped and/or insulated with fiberglass or mineral wool pipe insulation, and field installed.
 - 2. The system is to have a flame spread classification of less than 25 and smoke development rating of less than 50.
 - 3. Pipe, wrap, or insulation as a system to meet the requirements of CAN/ULC-S102.2-03, ASTM E84, or UL 2846.
 - 4. For insulation required for thermal and condensation reasons, see Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."
- C. Integration of PP-R Piping Systems with Other Systems:
 - 1. When integrating PP-R piping systems with other systems or with components not made of PP-R (for example, valves, pumps, other piping, check valves, or strainers), ensure the operating parameters for PP-R will not damage other materials in the system or vice versa.
 - 2. Verify that all parts of the system are compatible with the medium being carried before installation. PP-R pipe does not require treatment to protect it from corrosion. Metals (ferrous and non-ferrous) in the system may be susceptible to corrosion. Provide water treatment to protect system metals.
 - 3. Do not mix PP-R pipe with other piping systems in conditions that will cause the other system or components to fail.
 - 4. For Domestic Hot Water Recirculation (DHWR) Systems:
 - a. When copper piping used in conjunction with PP-R in a domestic hot water recirculation system, ensure the operating conditions will not cause degradation or erosion/corrosion of the copper.
 - b. Follow the Copper Development Association guidelines (CDA Publication A4015-14/16: "Copper Tube Handbook") for sizing, temperature and flow velocity in the copper tubing.
 - c. Sustained high levels of copper in DHWR piping can damage components within the system, even PP-R.

- d. Ensure that the maximum hot water-temperature within any part of the system/loop does not exceed 140 deg F. Some regulations and codes further restrict the temperature at any fixture to a maximum of 120 deg F. Do not exceed the temperature rating of the pipe for the operating pressure.
 - e. Maximum temperature used must not exceed the rating of the pipe for the operating pressure.
 - f. Flow rates in a domestic hot water recirculation system should not exceed 1.5 ft./sec anywhere in the system, except in some special cases where velocities up to 3 ft./sec are needed to achieve proper flow temperature.
 - g. When adding PP-R to an existing copper system in a domestic hot water recirculation application, the level of copper in the water must be tested. Do not install PP-R where levels exceed 0.1 mg/L (ppm).
- D. PP-R Socket Fittings: ASTM F2389.

2.12 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
 - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Flux: ASTM B813, water flushable.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8M/A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F493.
- G. Solvent Cements for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D2564. Include primer according to ASTM F656.
- H. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.13 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- B. Form: **Sheet or tube.**
- C. Color: **Black or natural.**

2.14 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
 - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
 - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. **CPVC or PVC** one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
 - b. One end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket **or threaded** end.
- E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. **CPVC or PVC** four-part union.
 - b. Brass **or stainless steel** threaded end.
 - c. Solvent-cement-joint **or threaded** plastic end.
 - d. Rubber O-ring.
 - e. Union nut.

2.15 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: **125 psig minimum at 180 deg F or 150 psig or 250 psig.**
 - 3. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: **125 psig minimum at 180 deg F or 150 psig or 175 psig or 300 psig.**
 - 4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 - 1. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: **150 psig.**

3. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 4. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 5. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Nipples:
1. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
 2. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F1545.
 3. Pressure Rating and Temperature: **300 psig at 225 deg F**.
 4. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
 5. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, **NPS 3 and smaller**, shall be **one of** the following:
 1. Annealed-temper copper tube, **ASTM B88, Type K or ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed or copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints**.
 2. PVC, **Schedule 40 or Schedule 80**; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 3. Polypropylene (PP-R), **SDR 7.4 or SDR 11** pipe and socket fusion, butt fusion, fusion outlet, or electrofusion fittings and joints.
- E. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, **NPS 4 to NPS 8 and larger**, shall be **one of** the following:
 1. Annealed-temper copper tube, **ASTM B88, Type K or ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints**.
 2. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; **standard or compact** pattern, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
 3. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; **standard or compact** pattern, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
 4. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 5. PVC, **Schedule 40 or Schedule 80**; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 6. Polypropylene (PP-R), **SDR 7.4 or SDR 11** pipe and socket fusion, butt fusion, fusion outlet, or electrofusion fittings and joints.

F. Under-building-slab, combined domestic water, building-service, and fire-service-main piping, **NPS 6 to NPS 12**, shall be **one of** the following:

1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; **standard or compact** pattern, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
2. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; **standard or compact** pattern, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
3. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

G. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, **NPS 2 and smaller**, shall be **one of** the following:

1. **Drawn-temper or annealed-temper** copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; **wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed or copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed** joints.
2. PVC, **Schedule 40 or Schedule 80**; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
3. Polypropylene (PP-R), **SDR 7.4 or SDR 11** pipe and socket fusion, butt fusion, fusion outlet, or electrofusion fittings and joints.

H. Aboveground domestic water piping, **NPS 2 and smaller**, shall be **one of** the following:

1. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Drawn-temper copper tube, **ASTM B88, Type L or ASTM B88, Type M; cast or wrought** copper, solder-joint fittings; and **brazed soldered** joints.
3. Drawn-temper copper tube, **ASTM B88, Type L or ASTM B88, Type M; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.**
4. Drawn-temper copper tube, **ASTM B88, Type L or ASTM B88, Type M; copper push-on-joint fittings; and push-on joints.**
5. Stainless steel, Schedule 10 pipe; pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
6. CPVC, **[Schedule 40] [Schedule 80]**; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
7. CPVC, Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80 threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
8. CPVC Tubing System: CPVC tube; CPVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints. **NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 CPVC pipe with CPVC socket fittings may be used instead of tubing.**
9. PEX tube, NPS 1 and smaller.

a. Fittings for PEX tube:

- 1) ASTM F1807, metal insert and copper crimp rings.
 - 2) ASTM F1960, cold expansion fittings and reinforcing rings.
 - 3) ASSE 1061, push-fit fittings.
10. PE-AL-PE tube, NPS 1 and smaller; fittings for PE-AL-PE tube; and crimped joints
 11. PEX-AL-PEX tube, NPS 1 and smaller; fittings for PEX-AL-PEX tube; and crimped joints.
 12. PVC, **Schedule 40 or Schedule 80**; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 13. Polypropylene (PP-R), **SDR 7.4 or SDR 11** pipe and socket fusion, butt fusion, fusion outlet, or electrofusion fittings and joints.

I. Aboveground domestic water piping, **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4**, shall be **one of** the following:

1. Drawn-temper copper tube, **ASTM B88, Type L or ASTM B88, Type M; cast or wrought** copper, solder-joint fittings; and **brazed or soldered** joints.
 2. Drawn-temper copper tube, **ASTM B88, Type L or ASTM B88, Type M**; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
 3. Drawn-temper copper tube, **ASTM B88, Type L or ASTM B88, Type M**; grooved-joint, copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 4. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 5. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 6. Stainless steel, **Schedule 10 or Schedule 40** pipe; grooved-joint fittings, and grooved joints.
 7. CPVC, **Schedule 40 or Schedule 80**; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 8. CPVC, Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80 threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 9. PVC, **Schedule 40 or Schedule 80**; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 10. Polypropylene (PP-R), **SDR 7.4 or SDR 11** pipe and socket fusion, butt fusion, fusion outlet, or electrofusion fittings and joints.
- J. Aboveground domestic water piping, **NPS 5 to NPS 8**, shall be **one of** the following:
1. Drawn-temper copper tube, **ASTM B88, Type L or ASTM B88, Type M; cast or wrought** copper, solder-joint fittings; and **brazed or soldered** joints.
 2. Drawn-temper copper tube, **ASTM B88, Type L or ASTM B88, Type M**; grooved-joint, copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 3. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 4. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 5. Stainless steel **Schedule 10 or Schedule 40** pipe, grooved-joint fittings, and grooved joints.
 6. CPVC, **Schedule 40 or Schedule 80**; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 7. CPVC, Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80 threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 8. PVC, **Schedule 40 or Schedule 80**; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 9. Polypropylene (PP-R) **SDR 7.4 or SDR 11** pipe and socket fusion, butt fusion, fusion outlet, or electrofusion fittings and joints.
- K. Aboveground, combined domestic water-service and fire-service-main piping, **NPS 6 to NPS 12**, shall be **one of** the following:
1. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 2. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 3. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 4. Stainless steel **Schedule 10 or Schedule 40** pipe, grooved-joint fittings, and grooved joints.

3.2 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground **copper tube and ductile-iron pipe** in PE encasement according to ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- E. Install valves according to the following:
 1. Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 2. Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 3. Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 4. Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- G. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- H. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- I. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- J. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- K. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- L. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- M. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

- N. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- O. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- P. Install PEX tubing with loop at each change of direction of more than 90 degrees.
- Q. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools and procedure recommended by pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.
- G. Push-on Joints for Copper Tubing: Clean end of tube. Measure insertion depth with manufacturer's depth gage. Join copper tube and push-on-joint fittings by inserting tube to measured depth.
- H. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.

- I. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Copper Tubing: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of tubes. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of tubes or tube and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in tubing grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- J. Joint Construction for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Cut round-bottom grooves in ends of pipe at gasket-seat dimension required for specified (flexible or rigid) joint. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- K. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Steel Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. **Square cut** or **Roll** groove ends of pipe as specified. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- L. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- M. Joint Construction for Solvent-Cemented Plastic Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
 - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2846/D2846M Appendix.
 - 3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2855.
- N. Joints for PEX Tubing, ASTM: Join according to ASTM F1807 for metal insert and copper crimp ring fittings and ASTM F1960 for cold expansion fittings and reinforcing rings.
- O. Joints for PEX Tubing, ASSE: Join according to ASSE 1061 for push-fit fittings.
- P. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
 - 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
 - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition **fittings or unions**.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 2** and Smaller: Use dielectric **couplings or nipples**.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4**: Use dielectric **flanges or flange kits or nipples**.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 5** and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for hangers, supports, and anchor devices in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install hangers for **copper, ductile iron, galvanized steel and stainless steel tubing and piping**, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- C. Install vinyl-coated hangers for **CPVC, PVC and PP** piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PEX tubing, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- E. Support horizontal piping within **12 inches** of each fitting.
- F. Support vertical runs of **copper, ductile iron, galvanized steel and stainless steel tubing and piping** to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- G. Support vertical runs of **CPVC, PVC and PP-R** piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- H. Support vertical runs of PEX tubing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
 4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.9 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Piping Inspections:
 - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:

- 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
 - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
 - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Piping Tests:
- a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
 - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - e. Hydrostatic testing and documentation of test results for polypropylene piping to be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and submitted to the manufacturer upon successful completion per warranty requirements.
 - f. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - g. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:

- 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
 - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 33 00
ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Commercial, electric, domestic-water booster heaters.
2. Commercial, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
3. Commercial, light-duty, storage, electric, domestic-water heaters.
4. Residential, small-capacity, electric, domestic-water heaters.
5. Residential, collector-to-tank, solar, electric, domestic-water heaters.
6. Residential, collector-to-tank-coil, solar, electric, domestic-water heaters.
7. Residential, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
8. Residential, tabletop, electric, domestic-water heaters.
9. Flow-control, electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters.
10. Thermostat-control, electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters.
11. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Equipment room drawing or BIM model, drawn to scale, on which the items described in this Section are shown and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of **residential**, electric, domestic-water heater.

- C. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric, domestic-water heaters to include emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
- b. Faulty operation of controls.
- c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.

2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.

a. Residential, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

- 1) Storage Tank: **Five** years.
- 2) Controls and Other Components: **Three** years.
- b. Expansion Tanks: **Five** years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Seismic Performance: Commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with **ASCE/SEI 7**.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified **and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event.**"
 2. Component Importance Factor: **1.5**
- C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- D. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- E. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

2.2 RESIDENTIAL, ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Residential, Small-Capacity, Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters:
1. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 2. Standard: UL 174.
 3. Storage-Tank Construction: Corrosion-resistant metal **or steel with corrosion-resistant coating.**
 - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
 4. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection if tank has drain outlet. Provide hose-end drain valve in piping for domestic-water heaters without drain outlet. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
 - b. Insulation: Comply with **ASHRAE/IES 90.1**.
 - c. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish or high-impact composite material.
 - d. Heating Element: One; electric, screw-in immersion type.
 - e. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - f. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
 - g. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- B. Residential, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 1. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 2. Standard: UL 174.
 3. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.

- a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
4. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
- a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with **ASHRAE/IES 90.1**
 - e. Jacket: Steel, cylindrical, with enameled finish or high-impact composite material.
 - f. Heat-Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
 - g. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in immersion type.
 - h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - i. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
 - j. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

2.3 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

- A. Domestic-Water Expansion Tanks:
1. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water expansion tanks from single source from single manufacturer.
 2. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
 3. Construction:
 - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
 4. Capacity and Characteristics:
 - a. Working-Pressure Rating: **150 psig**.
 - b. Capacity Acceptable: [**2 gal.**] minimum.
- B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
- C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement in accordance with **ASHRAE/IES 90.1**

- D. Heat-Trap Fittings: **ASHRAE/IES 90.1**.
- E. Manifold Kits: Domestic-water-heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping for field installation, for multiple domestic-water heater installation. Include ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves to isolate each domestic-water heater and **calibrated or memory-stop** balancing valves to provide balanced flow through each domestic-water heater.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for balancing valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASSE 1003 for water. Set at 25-psig-maximum outlet pressure unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- H. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater.
- I. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
- J. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.
- K. Domestic-Water Heater Stands: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Include dimension that will support bottom of domestic-water heater a minimum of **18 inches** above the floor.
- L. Domestic-Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Hydrostatically test domestic-water heaters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
 - 2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 - 5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Residential, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install residential, electric, domestic-water heaters **on floor or on water-heater stand on floor or on domestic-water heater mounting bracket.**
 - 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- C. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
 - 1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend domestic-water heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- E. Install **combination temperature-and** pressure relief valves in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend domestic-water heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

- F. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- G. Install thermometers on outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- H. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- I. Fill electric, domestic-water heaters with water.
- J. Charge domestic-water expansion tanks with air to required system pressure.
- K. Install dielectric fittings in all locations where piping of dissimilar metals is to be joined. The wetted surface of the dielectric fitting contacted by potable water shall contain less than 0.25 percent of lead by weight.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative** if needed.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.

3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. **Train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain, electric, domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 13

COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
1. Motor controllers.
 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: **Class F**.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors **15 HP** and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller Than **15 HP**: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes **324T** and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than **324T**.

2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: **Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.**
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
 - 2. Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - 2. Split phase.
 - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

SECTION 23 05 29

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Hanger rods.
 - 3. Inserts.
 - 4. Flashing.
 - 5. Equipment curbs.
 - 6. Sleeves.
 - 7. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 8. Formed steel channel.
 - 9. Firestopping and accessories for HVAC Work.
 - 10. Equipment bases and supports.

- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 22 07 19 - Plumbing Piping Insulation: Piping and accessory insulation as required by this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Firestopping (Through-Penetration Protection System): The material used to seal or stuff or an assembly placed in spaces between and penetrations through building materials to arrest movement of fire, smoke, heat, and hot gases through fire-rated construction.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. American Welding Society:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M - Structural Welding Code - Steel.

- B. ASME International:
 - 1. ASME B31.1 - Power Piping.
 - 2. ASME B31.5 - Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components.
 - 3. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping.

- C. ASTM International:
 - 1. ASTM E119 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
 - 2. ASTM E814 - Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestop Systems.
 - 3. ASTM E1966 - Standard Test Method for Fire-Resistive Joint Systems.
 - 4. ASTM F708 - Standard Practice for Design and Installation of Rigid Pipe Hangers.

- D. FM Global:
 - 1. FM - Approval Guide.
- E. Intertek Testing Services (Warnock Hersey Mark):
 - 1. WH-ETL - Product Directory.
- F. Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry:
 - 1. MSS SP-58 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation.
- G. UL:
 - 1. UL - Fire-resistance-rated Systems and Products.
 - 2. UL 263 - Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
 - 3. UL 1479 - Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Firestops.
 - 4. UL 2079 - Tests for Fire Resistance of Building Joint Systems.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements: Requirements for preinstallation meeting.
- B. Convene minimum **one week** prior to commencing Work of this Section.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Section 01 33 00 - Submittal Procedures: Requirements for submittals.
- B. Product Data:
 - 1. Hangers and Supports: Submit manufacturer's catalog information, including load capacity.
 - 2. Firestopping: Submit information on product characteristics, performance, and limitations.
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Indicate system layout with location, including critical dimensions and sizes.
 - 2. Indicate pipe hanger and support locations, and detail of trapeze hangers.
- D. Firestopping Schedule: Submit schedule of opening locations and sizes, penetrated items, and specified design numbers to seal openings to maintain fire-resistance rating of adjacent assembly.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- F. Delegated Design Submittals:
 - 1. Submit signed and sealed Shop Drawings with design calculations and assumptions for load-carrying capacity of trapeze, multiple-pipe, and riser support hangers.
 - 2. Submit sizing methods and calculations sealed by a registered professional engineer (P.E.).
 - 3. Firestopping Engineering Judgments: For conditions not covered by UL or WH-ETL listed designs, submit judgments by licensed P.E. suitable for presentation

to authority having jurisdiction for acceptance as meeting fire protection code requirements.

- G. Manufacturer Instructions:
 - 1. Hangers and Supports: Submit special procedures and assembly of components.
 - 2. Firestopping: Submit preparation and installation instructions.
- H. Field Quality-Control Submittals: Indicate results of Contractor-furnished tests and inspections.
- I. Qualifications Statements:
 - 1. Submit qualifications for manufacturer, installer, and licensed professional.
 - 2. Welders: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Through-Penetration Firestopping of Fire-Rated Assemblies:
 - 1. Comply with **UL 1479 or ASTM E814**.
 - 2. Positive Pressure Differential:
 - a. As required to achieve fire F-ratings and temperature T-ratings as indicated on Drawings, but not less than one hour.
 - b. Minimum 0.10 inch wg.
 - 3. Wall Penetrations: Fire F-ratings as indicated on Drawings, but not less than one hour.
 - 4. Floor and Roof Penetrations:
 - a. Fire F-ratings and temperature T-ratings as indicated on Drawings, but not less than one hour.
 - b. Floor Penetrations within Wall Cavities: T-rating not required.
- B. Through-Penetration Firestopping of Non-fire-rated Floor and Roof Assemblies:
 - 1. Materials: Resist free passage of flame and products of combustion.
 - 2. Noncombustible Penetrating Items: Connecting maximum three stories.
 - 3. Penetrating Items: Materials approved by authorities having jurisdiction for connecting maximum two stories.
- C. Fire-Resistive Joints in Fire-Rated Floor, Roof, and Wall Assemblies:
 - 1. Comply with **ASTM E1966 or UL 2079**.
 - 2. As required to achieve fire-resistance rating as indicated on Drawings for assembly in which joint is installed.
- D. Fire-Resistive Joints between Floor Slabs and Exterior Walls:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM E119.
 - 2. Positive Pressure Differential:
 - a. As required to achieve fire F-ratings and temperature T-ratings as indicated on Drawings for floor assembly.
 - b. Minimum 0.10 inch wg.
- E. Surface-Burning Characteristics:
 - 1. Maximum 25/450 flame-spread/smoke-developed index.
 - 2. Testing: Comply with ASTM E84.

- F. Welding of Hanger and Support Attachments to Building Structure: Comply with **applicable authority**.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this Section with minimum **three** years' **documented** experience.
- B. Installer: Company specializing in performing Work of this Section with minimum **three** years' **documented** experience **and approved by manufacturer**.
- C. Welders: AWS qualified within previous 12 months for employed weld types.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements: Requirements for transporting, handling, storing, and protecting products.
- B. Inspection: Accept materials on Site in manufacturer's original packaging and inspect for damage.
- C. Store materials according to manufacturer instructions.
- D. Protection:
 - 1. Protect materials from moisture and dust by storing in clean, dry location remote from construction operations areas.
 - 2. Provide additional protection according to manufacturer instructions.

1.9 AMBIENT CONDITIONS

- A. Section 01 50 00 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: Requirements for ambient condition control facilities for product storage and installation.
- B. Minimum Conditions:
 - 1. Do not apply firestopping materials if temperature of substrate material and ambient air is below 60 degrees F.
 - 2. Maintain this minimum temperature before, during, and for minimum three days after installation of firestopping materials.
- C. Provide ventilation in areas to receive solvent cured materials.

1.10 EXISTING CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements:
 - 1. Verify field measurements prior to fabrication.
 - 2. Indicate field measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for warranties.
- B. Furnish **five** -year manufacturer's warranty for pipe hangers and supports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Firestopping Materials:
 - 1. Comply with [ASTM E119] [, ASTM E814] [, UL 263] [, and] [UL 1479].
 - 2. Adjacent Construction:
 - a. Achieve fire ratings as indicated on Drawings for adjacent construction.
 - b. Minimum Fire Rating: One hour.
 - c. **Fire ratings may be three hours for firestopping in through-penetrations of four-hour fire-rated assemblies, unless otherwise required by applicable codes.**
- B. Firestop interruptions to fire-rated assemblies, materials, and components.

2.2 PERFORMANCE AND DESIGN CRITERIA

- A. Firestopping:
 - 1. Comply with **applicable code** for fire-resistance ratings and surface-burning characteristics.
 - 2. Provide certificate of compliance from authority having jurisdiction indicating approval of materials used.

2.3 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Substitutions: **As specified in Section 016000 - Product Requirements**
- B. Hydronic Piping:
 - 1. Comply with [ASME B31.9] [ASTM F708] [MSS SP-58].
 - 2. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 1/2 Inch to 1-1/2 Inches:
 - a. Material: [**Malleable iron**] [**Carbon steel**].
 - b. Type: Adjustable swivel and split ring.
 - 3. Hangers for Cold Pipe, Sizes 2 Inches and Larger:
 - a. Material: Carbon steel.
 - b. Type: Adjustable; clevis.
 - 4. Hangers for Hot Pipe, Sizes 2 to 4 Inches:
 - a. Material: Carbon steel.
 - b. Type: Adjustable; clevis.
 - 5. Hangers for Hot Pipe, Sizes 6 Inches and Larger:
 - a. Type: Double hanger.
 - b. Yoke: Adjustable; steel.
 - c. Roll: Cast iron.
 - 6. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods.
 - 7. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers for Hot Pipe, Sizes 6 Inches and Larger:
 - a. Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods.

- b. Roll: Cast iron.
- 8. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes 3 Inches and Smaller: Cast-iron hooks.
- 9. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes 4 Inches and Larger: Welded steel bracket and wrought steel clamp.
- 10. Wall Support for Hot Pipe Sizes 6 Inches and Larger:
 - a. Welded steel bracket and wrought steel clamp.
 - b. Yoke: Adjustable; steel.
 - c. Roll: Cast iron.
- 11. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.
- 12. Floor Support for Cold Pipe:
 - a. Pipe Saddle: Cast iron; adjustable.
 - b. Support: Concrete pier or steel column.
 - c. Furnish lock nut, nipple, and floor flange.
- 13. Floor Support for Hot Pipe, Sizes 4 Inches and Smaller:
 - a. Pipe Saddle: Cast iron; adjustable.
 - b. Support: Concrete pier or steel column.
 - c. Furnish lock nut, nipple, and floor flange.
- 14. Floor Support for Hot Pipe, Sizes 6 Inches and Larger:
 - a. Roll and Stand: Cast iron; adjustable.
 - b. Screws: Steel.
 - c. Support: Concrete pier or steel column.
- 15. Copper Pipe Support: Copper-plated carbon-steel ring.
- 16. .

C. Refrigerant Piping:

- 1. Conform to **ASME B31.5 or ASTM F708 or MSS SP-58**.
- 2. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 1/2 Inch to 1-1/2 Inches: **Malleable iron or Carbon steel**, adjustable swivel, split ring.
- 3. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 2 Inches and Larger: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
- 4. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods.
- 5. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes 3 Inches and Smaller: Cast iron hook.
- 6. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes 4 Inches and Larger: Welded steel bracket and wrought steel clamp.
- 7. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.
- 8. Floor Support: Cast iron adjustable pipe saddle, lock nut, nipple, floor flange, and concrete pier or steel support.
- 9. Copper Pipe Support: Copper-plated carbon-steel ring.

D. Accessories:

- 1. Hanger Rods: Mild steel **threaded both ends, threaded on one end, or continuously threaded**.

2.4 INSERTS

A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Substitutions: **As specified in Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements**

- B. Description:
1. Malleable iron case with **galvanized** steel shell and expander plug for threaded connection.
 2. Lateral adjustment, top slot for reinforcing rods, and lugs for attaching to forms.
 3. Size: To suit threaded hanger rods.

2.5 FLASHING

- A. Metal Flashing:
1. Material: Galvanized steel.
 2. Thickness: **26 gage**.
- B. Metal Counterflashing:
1. Material: Galvanized steel.
 2. Thickness: **22 gage**.
- C. Sheet Lead Flashing:
1. Waterproofing: 5 psf.
 2. Soundproofing: 1 psf.
- D. Flexible Flashing:
1. Material:
 - a. Sheet **butyl**.
 - b. Compatible with roofing.
 2. Thickness: **47 mils**.
- E. Caps:
1. Material: Steel.
 2. Minimum Thickness:
 - a. 22 gage.
 - b. 16 gage at fire-resistive elements.

2.6 EQUIPMENT CURBS

1. Substitutions: **As specified in Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements**.
- B. Description:
1. Shell and Base: Welded 18-gage galvanized steel.
 2. Cant: Mitered; 3 inches.
 3. **Variable Step: To match roof insulation.**
 4. Wood Nailer: Factory installed.

2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Pipes through Non-fire-rated Floors:
1. Material: Galvanized steel.
 2. Thickness: 18 gage.
- B. Pipes through Non-fire-rated Beams, Walls, Footings, and Potentially Wet Floors: Steel pipe or **18-gage** galvanized steel.
- C. Round Ductwork: Galvanized steel.

- D. Rectangular Ductwork: Galvanized steel or wood.
- E. Sealant:
 - 1. Material: **Acrylic**.

2.8 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Substitutions: **As specified in Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements**.
- B. Description:
 - 1. Type: Modular mechanical.
 - 2. Configuration: Interlocking synthetic rubber links shaped to continuously fill annular space between object and sleeve.
 - 3. Connection: Bolts and pressure plates causing rubber sealing elements to expand when tightened, providing watertight seal and insulation.

2.9 FORMED STEEL CHANNEL

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Substitutions: **As specified in Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements**.
- B. Description:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized 12-gage steel.
 - 2. Thickness: 12 gage.
 - 3. Hole Spacing: 1-1/2 inches o.c.

2.10 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Substitutions: **As specified in Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements**.
- B. Description:
 - 1. Various types of products by multiple manufacturers are acceptable as required to meet specified system description and performance requirements.
 - 2. Provide only one type for each similar application.
 - 3. Silicone Elastomeric Firestopping: **Single** or **Multiple**-component silicone elastomeric compound and compatible silicone sealant.
 - 4. Foam Firestopping Compounds: **Single** or **Multiple**-component foam compound.
 - 5. Formulated Firestopping Compound of Incombustible Fibers: Formulated compound mixed with incombustible non-asbestos fibers.
 - 6. Fiber Stuffing and Sealant Firestopping: Composite of **mineral** or **ceramic**-fiber stuffing insulation with silicone elastomer for smoke stopping.
 - 7. Mechanical Firestopping Device with Fillers: Mechanical device with incombustible fillers and silicone elastomer, covered with sheet stainless-steel jacket, joined with collars, and penetration sealed with flanged stops.
 - 8. Intumescent Firestopping: Intumescent putty compound which expands on exposure to surface heat gain.
 - 9. Firestop Pillows: Formed mineral-fiber pillows.

C. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range of colors.

2.11 FIRESTOPPING ACCESSORIES

- A. Primer: Type as recommended by firestopping manufacturer for specific substrate surfaces and as suitable for required fire ratings.
- B. Permanent Dam Material:
 - 1. **Mineral fiberboard.**
 - 2. **Mineral fiber matting.**
 - 3. **Sheet metal.**
 - 4. **Plywood or particle board.**
 - 5. **Alumina silicate board.**
- C. Installation Accessories: Provide clips, collars, fasteners, temporary stops or dams, and other devices required to position and retain materials in place.
- D. General:
 - 1. Furnish UL-listed products
 - 2. Select products with rating not less than rating of wall or floor being penetrated.
- E. Nonrated Surfaces:
 - 1. Covering for Openings in Occupied Areas Where Piping is Exposed: Stamped-steel, chrome-plated, hinged, split-ring escutcheons, or floor or ceiling plates.
 - 2. Exterior Wall Openings below Grade: Furnish **mechanical sealing device to continuously fill annular space between piping and cored opening or waterstop-type wall sleeve.**

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for installation examination.
- B. Verify that openings are ready to receive sleeves.
- C. Verify that openings are ready to receive firestopping.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for installation preparation.
- B. Clean substrate surfaces of dirt, dust, grease, oil, loose material, or other matter that may affect bond of firestopping material.
- C. Remove incompatible materials that may affect bond.
- D. Install **backing** or **damming** materials to arrest liquid material leakage.

- E. Obtain permission from **Architect/Engineer** before using powder-actuated anchors.
- F. Obtain permission from **Architect/Engineer** before drilling or cutting structural members.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Inserts:
 - 1. Install inserts for placement in concrete forms.
 - 2. Install inserts for suspending hangers from reinforced concrete slabs and sides of reinforced concrete beams.
 - 3. Provide hooked rod to concrete reinforcement section for inserts carrying pipe 4 inches and larger.
 - 4. If concrete slabs form finished ceiling, locate inserts flush with slab surface.
 - 5. If inserts are omitted, drill through concrete slab from below and provide through bolt with recessed square steel plate and nut **above or flush with top of or recessed into and grouted flush with** slab.
- B. Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Comply with ASME **B31.1 or B31.5 or B31.9**.
 - 2. Minimum Hanger Spacing: 1/2 inch between finished covering and adjacent Work.
 - 3. Place hangers within 12 inches of each horizontal elbow.
 - 4. Minimum Vertical Hanger Adjustment: 1-1/2 inches.
 - 5. Support vertical piping at every [**other**] floor.
 - 6. If piping is installed in parallel and at same elevation, provide multiple-pipe or trapeze hangers.
 - 7. Support riser piping independently of connected horizontal piping.
 - 8. Provide **copper-plated hangers and supports for copper piping**.
 - 9. Design hangers for pipe movement without disengagement of supported pipe.
 - 10. Painting and Coating:
 - a. Prime coat exposed steel hangers and supports.
 - b. Hangers and supports located in crawl spaces, pipe shafts, and suspended ceiling spaces are not considered exposed.
 - 11. Insulation:
 - a. Provide clearance in hangers and from structure and other equipment for installation of insulation.
 - b. As specified in Section 22 07 19 - Plumbing Piping Insulation.
- C. Equipment Bases and Supports:
 - 1. Provide **housekeeping pads** of concrete as specified.
 - 2. Minimum Size: 3-1/2 inches thick and extending 6 inches beyond supported **equipment**.
 - 3. Use templates furnished with equipment to install equipment anchor bolts and accessories.
 - 4. Supports:
 - a. Material: **Steel members or Formed steel channel or Steel pipe and fittings**.
 - b. Brace and fasten with flanges bolted to structure.

5. Provide rigid anchors for pipes after vibration isolation components are installed as specified in 21 05 48 - Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment.

D. Flashing:

1. Provide flexible flashing and metal counterflashing where piping and ductwork penetrate weatherproofed or waterproofed walls, floors, and roofs.
2. For sound control, provide acoustical-lead flashing around ducts and pipes penetrating equipment rooms.
3. Curbs:
 - a. Provide curbs for roof installations with minimum height of **14 inches** above roofing surface.
 - b. Flash and counterflash with sheet metal and seal watertight.
 - c. Attach counterflashing to equipment and lap base flashing on roof curbs.
 - d. Flatten and solder joints.
4. Storm Collars:
 - a. Adjust storm collars tight to pipe with bolts and caulk around top edge.
 - b. Install storm collars above roof jacks.
 - c. Screw vertical flange section to face of curb.

E. Sleeves:

1. Exterior Watertight Entries: Seal with mechanical sleeve seals.
2. Set sleeves in position in forms and provide reinforcing around sleeves.
3. Sizing:
 - a. Size sleeves large enough to allow for movement due to expansion and contraction.
 - b. Provide for continuous insulation wrapping.
4. Extend sleeves through floors **1 inch** above finished floor level, and caulk sleeves.
5. Spaces:
 - a. If piping or ductwork penetrates floor, ceiling, or wall, close off space between pipe or duct and adjacent Work with **stuffing and firestopping** insulation and caulk **airtight**.
 - b. Provide close-fitting metal collar or escutcheon covers at both sides of penetration.
 - c. Install **chrome-plated steel or plastic or stainless-steel** escutcheons at finished surfaces.

F. Firestopping:

1. Install material at fire-rated construction perimeters and openings containing penetrating sleeves, piping, ductwork, and other items requiring firestopping.
2. Apply primer where recommended by manufacturer for type of firestopping material and substrate involved, and as required for compliance with required fire ratings.
3. Apply firestopping material [**to uniform density and texture and**] in sufficient thickness to achieve required fire and smoke rating.
4. Placement: Compress fibered material to maximum 40 percent of its uncompressed size.
5. Dam Material: **To remain**.

6. Fire-Rated Surfaces:
 - a. Seal opening at **floor, wall, partition, ceiling, and roof**.
 - b. Install sleeve through opening and extending beyond minimum of 1 inch on both sides of building element.
 - c. Size sleeve allowing minimum of 1 inch void between sleeve and building element.
 - d. Pack void with backing material.
 - e. Seal ends of sleeve with UL-listed fire-resistive silicone compound to meet fire rating of structure being penetrated.
7. If **cable tray, bus, cable bus, conduit, wireway, and trough** penetrate fire-rated surface, install firestopping product according to manufacturer instructions.
8. Nonrated Surfaces:
 - a. Seal opening through non-fire-rated **wall, partition, floor, ceiling, and roof opening**.
 - b. Install sleeve through opening and extending beyond minimum of 1 inch on both sides of building element.
 - c. Size sleeve allowing minimum of 1 inch void between sleeve and building element.
 - d. Install type of firestopping material as recommended by manufacturer.
9. Occupied Spaces:
 - a. Install **escutcheons, floor plates, or ceiling plates** where conduit penetrates non-fire-rated surfaces in occupied spaces.
 - b. Occupied spaces include rooms with finished ceilings and where penetration occurs below finished ceiling.
10. Exterior Wall Openings below Grade: Assemble rubber links of mechanical sealing device to size of piping and tighten in place according to manufacturer instructions.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Inspect installed firestopping for compliance with specifications and submitted schedule.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for cleaning.
- B. Clean adjacent surfaces of firestopping materials.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for protecting finished Work.
- B. Protect adjacent surfaces from damage by material installation.

3.7 ATTACHMENTS

- A. Pipe Hanger Spacing:
 - 1. Pipe Material: ABS.
 - a. Maximum Hanger Spacing: 4 feet.
 - b. Hanger Rod Diameter: 3/8 inch.
 - 2. Pipe Material: Aluminum.
 - a. Maximum Hanger Spacing: 10 feet.
 - b. Hanger Rod Diameter: 1/2 inch.
 - 3. Pipe Material: Cast iron.
 - a. Maximum Hanger Spacing: 5 feet.
 - b. Hanger Rod Diameter: 5/8 inch.
 - 4. Pipe Material: Cast iron, with 10-foot length of pipe.
 - a. Maximum Hanger Spacing: 10 feet.
 - b. Hanger Rod Diameter: 5/8 inch.
 - 5. Pipe Material: CPVC.
 - a. Size: 1 inch and smaller.
 - b. Maximum Hanger Spacing: 3 feet.
 - c. Hanger Rod Diameter: 1/2 inch.
 - 6. Pipe Material: CPVC.
 - a. Size: 1-1/4 inches and larger.
 - b. Maximum Hanger Spacing: 4 feet.
 - c. Hanger Rod Diameter: 1/2 inch.
 - 7. Pipe Material: Copper tube.
 - a. Size: 1-1/4 inches and smaller.
 - b. Maximum Hanger Spacing: 6 feet.
 - c. Hanger Rod Diameter: 1/2 inch.
 - 8. Pipe Material: Copper tube.
 - a. Size: 1-1/2 inches and larger.
 - b. Maximum Hanger Spacing: 10 feet.
 - c. Hanger Rod Diameter: 1/2 inch.
 - 9. Pipe Material: Fiberglass.
 - a. Maximum Hanger Spacing: 4 feet.
 - b. Hanger Rod Diameter: 1/2 inch.
 - 10. Pipe Material: Glass.
 - a. Maximum Hanger Spacing: 8 feet.
 - b. Hanger Rod Diameter: 1/2 inch.
 - 11. Pipe Material: Polybutylene.
 - a. Maximum Hanger Spacing: 2.7 feet.
 - b. Hanger Rod Diameter: 3/8 inch.
 - 12. Pipe Material: Polypropylene.
 - a. Maximum Hanger Spacing: 4 feet.
 - b. Hanger Rod Diameter: 3/8 inch.
 - 13. Pipe Material: PVC.
 - a. Maximum Hanger Spacing: 4 feet.
 - b. Hanger Rod Diameter: 3/8 inch.
 - 14. Pipe Material: Steel.
 - a. Size: 3 inches and smaller.
 - b. Maximum Hanger Spacing: 12 feet.

- c. Hanger Rod Diameter: 1/2 inch.
15. Pipe Material: Steel.
 - a. Size: 4 inches and larger.
 - b. Maximum Hanger Spacing: 12 feet.
 - c. Hanger Rod Diameter: 5/8 inch.

END OF SECTION 23 05 29

SECTION 23 05 53
IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Duct labels.
5. Stencils.
6. Valve tags.
7. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: **Brass, 0.032-inch stainless steel, 0.025-inch or aluminum, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch** minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 2. Letter Color: **Black or Blue or Red or White or Yellow.**
 3. Background Color: **Black or Blue or Red or White or Yellow.**
 4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
 6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel **rivets or self-tapping screws.**
 7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, **1/16 inch or 1/8 inch** thick and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 2. Letter Color: **Black or Blue or Red or White or Yellow.**
 3. Background Color: **Black or Blue or Red or White or Yellow.**
 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel **rivets or self-tapping screws.**
 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, **1/16 inch or 1/8 inch** thick and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: **Black or Blue or Red or White or Yellow.**
- C. Background Color: **Black or Blue or Red or White or Yellow**
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel **rivets or self-tapping screws**.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to **partially cover or cover full** circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: **Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping**

2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, **1/16 inch or 1/8 inch** thick and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: **Black or Blue or Red or White or Yellow**.
- C. Background Color: **Black or Blue or Red or White or Yellow**.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater

viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.

- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel **rivets or self-tapping screws**.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include duct size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.

2.5 STENCILS

- A. Stencils for Piping:
 - 1. Lettering Size: **Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping**
 - 2. Stencil Material: **Aluminum or Brass or Fiberboard or Fiberboard or metal**
 - 3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, **alkyd enamel** or **acrylic enamel** in colors complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 4. Identification Paint: Exterior, **alkyd enamel** or **acrylic enamel** in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
- B. Stencils for Ducts:
 - 1. Lettering Size: Minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches for viewing distances up to 15 feet and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
 - 2. Stencil Material: **Aluminum or Brass or Fiberboard or Fiberboard or metal**.
 - 3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, **alkyd enamel** or **acrylic enamel**. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 4. Identification Paint: Exterior, **alkyd enamel** or **acrylic enamel**. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
- C. Stencils for Access Panels and Door Labels, Equipment Labels, and Similar Operational Instructions:
 - 1. Lettering Size: Minimum letter height of 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
 - 2. Stencil Material: **Aluminum or Brass or Fiberboard or Fiberboard or metal**.
 - 3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, **alkyd enamel** or **acrylic enamel**. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 4. Identification Paint: Exterior, **alkyd enamel** or **acrylic enamel**. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

2.6 VALVE TAGS

- A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: **Brass, 0.032-inch or stainless steel, 0.025-inch or aluminum, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch** minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 2. Fasteners: Brass **wire-link chain or beaded chain or S-hook**.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.7 WARNING TAGS

- A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: **3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum or Approximately 4 by 7 inches**.
 2. Fasteners: **Brass grommet and wire or Reinforced grommet and wire or string**.
 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 4. Color: Safety-yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in **Section 099123 "Interior Painting."** Or **Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."**
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, **with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles** on each piping system.
 - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of **50 feet** along each run. Reduce intervals to **25 feet** in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- D. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- E. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
 - 1. Condenser-Water Piping: **White letters on a safety-green background or Black letters on a safety-orange background.**
 - 2. Heating Water Piping: **White letters on a safety-green background or Black letters on a safety-orange background.**
 - 3. Refrigerant Piping: **Black letters on a safety-orange background or White letters on a safety-purple background or Black letters on a safety-white background or White letters on a safety-gray background or White letters on a safety-black background.**
 - 4. >.

3.5 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install **self-adhesive** duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
 - 1. **Blue:** For cold-air supply ducts.
 - 2. **Yellow:** For hot-air supply ducts.
 - 3. **Green:** For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.

- B. Stenciled Duct Label Option: Stenciled labels showing service and flow direction may be provided instead of plastic-laminated duct labels, at Installer's option.
- C. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of **50 feet** in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.6 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Condenser Water: **1-1/2 inches or 2 inches, round or square.**
 - b. Refrigerant: **1-1/2 inches or 2 inches, round or square.**
 - c. Hot Water: **1-1/2 inches or 2 inches, round or square.**
 - d. Gas: **1-1/2 inches or 2 inches, round or square.**
 2. Valve-Tag Colors:
 - a. Toxic and Corrosive Fluids: Black letters on a safety-orange background.
 - b. Flammable Fluids: Black letters on a safety-yellow background.
 - c. Combustible Fluids: White letters on a safety-brown background.
 - d. Potable and Other Water: White letters on a safety-green background.
 - e. Compressed Air: White letters on a safety-blue background.
 - f. Defined by User: White letters on a safety-purple background, black letters on a safety-white background, white letters on a safety-gray background, and white letters on a safety-black background

3.7 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 93
TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.
2. Balancing steam systems.
3. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
 - a. Condensing units.
4. Sound tests.
5. Control system verification.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: If requested by the Owner, conduct a TAB conference at [Project site] after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the

details. Provide a minimum of [14] days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.

1. Minimum Agenda Items:

- a. The Contract Documents examination report.
- b. The TAB plan.
- c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
- d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within **60** days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within **60** days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within **60** days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within **60** days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
 - 1. Instrument type and make.
 - 2. Serial number.
 - 3. Application.
 - 4. Dates of use.
 - 5. Dates of calibration.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC.

- 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.

2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC as a TAB technician.
- B. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by **NEBB or TABB**.
1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by **NEBB or TABB**.
 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by **NEBB or TABB** as a TAB technician.
- C. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.
- B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.

- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

2.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
 - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
 - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
 - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
 - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
 - 1. Airside:

- a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
 - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
 - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
 - d. Clean filters are installed.
 - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
 - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
 - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - h. Ceilings are installed.
 - i. Windows and doors are installed.
 - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.
2. Hydronics:
- a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
 - b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
 - c. Water treatment is complete.
 - d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
 - e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
 - f. Control valves are functioning per the sequence of operation.
 - g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
 - h. Pumps are started and proper rotation is verified.
 - i. Pump gage connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
 - j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
 - k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

2.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in **AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance," ASHRAE 111, NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems," SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing"** and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 - 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 - 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.

- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in **inch-pound (IP)** units.

2.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

2.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses, close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.
 - c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.

- c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 4. Obtain approval from **Architect, Owner, Construction Manager, and commissioning authority** for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
 2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
 3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
 4. Mark all final settings.
 5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
 6. Measure and record all operating data.
 7. Record final fan-performance data.

2.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record fan and motor operating data.

2.7 SOUND TESTS

- A. After the systems are balanced and construction is Substantially Complete, measure and record sound levels at [5] locations as designated by the Architect.
- B. Instrumentation:
 - 1. The sound-testing meter shall be a portable, general-purpose testing meter consisting of a microphone, processing unit, and readout.
 - 2. The sound-testing meter shall be capable of showing fluctuations at minimum and maximum levels, and measuring the equivalent continuous sound pressure level (LEQ).
 - 3. The sound-testing meter must be capable of using 1/3 octave band filters to measure mid-frequencies from 31.5 Hz to 8000 Hz.
 - 4. The accuracy of the sound-testing meter shall be plus or minus one decibel.
- C. Test Procedures:
 - 1. Perform test at quietest background noise period. Note cause of unpreventable sound that affects test outcome.
 - 2. Equipment should be operating at design values.
 - 3. Calibrate the sound-testing meter prior to taking measurements.
 - 4. Use a microphone suitable for the type of noise levels measured that is compatible with meter. Provide a windshield for outside or in-duct measurements.
 - 5. Record a set of background measurements in dBA and sound pressure levels in the eight un-weighted octave bands **63 Hz to 8000 Hz (NC)** with the equipment off.
 - 6. Take sound readings in dBA and sound pressure levels in the eight un-weighted octave bands **63 Hz to 8000 Hz (NC)** with the equipment operating.
 - 7. Take readings no closer than 36 inches from a wall or from the operating equipment and approximately 60 inches from the floor, with the meter held or mounted on a tripod.
 - 8. For outdoor measurements, move sound-testing meter slowly and scan area that has the most exposure to noise source being tested. Use A-weighted scale for this type of reading.
- D. Reporting:
 - 1. Report shall record the following:
 - a. Location.
 - b. System tested.
 - c. dBA reading.
 - d. Sound pressure level in each octave band with equipment on and off.
 - 2. Plot sound pressure levels on **NC** worksheet with equipment on and off.

2.8 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
 - 1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.

- 2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
 - 3. Check the refrigerant charge.
 - 4. Check the condition of filters.
 - 5. Check the condition of coils.
 - 6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
 - 7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
 - 8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.
- B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:
- 1. New filters are installed.
 - 2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
 - 3. Drain pans are clean.
 - 4. Fans are clean.
 - 5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
 - 6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
- 1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
 - 2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
 - 3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
 - 4. Balance each air outlet.

2.9 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
- 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: **Plus or minus 10 percent**
 - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: **Plus or minus 10 percent**
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

2.10 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate

proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

- B. Status Reports: Prepare **monthly** progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

2.11 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
1. Pump curves.
 2. Fan curves.
 3. Manufacturers' test data.
 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
1. Title page.
 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
 3. Project name.
 4. Project location.
 5. Architect's name and address.
 6. Engineer's name and address.
 7. Contractor's name and address.
 8. Report date.
 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.

14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 2. Water and steam flow rates.
 3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
 5. Terminal units.
 6. Balancing stations.
 7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.
 - g. Discharge arrangement.
 - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.

- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
- c. Fan rpm.
- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
- j. Return airflow in cfm.
- k. Outdoor-air damper position.
- l. Return-air damper position.
- m. Vortex damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil type.
- d. Number of rows.
- e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
- f. Make and model number.
- g. Face area in sq. ft..
- h. Tube size in NPS.
- i. Tube and fin materials.
- j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Average face velocity in fpm.
- c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
- d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- h. Water flow rate in gpm.
- i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
- j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
- k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
- l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
- m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
- n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
- o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

G. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Coil identification.
 - d. Capacity in Btu/h.
 - e. Number of stages.
 - f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
 - g. Rated amperage.
 - h. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - i. Face area in sq. ft..
 - j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Heat output in Btu/h.
 - b. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - c. Air velocity in fpm.
 - d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
 - e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
 - f. Voltage at each connection.
 - g. Amperage for each phase.

H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Arrangement and class.
 - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:

- a. System and air-handling-unit number.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
- d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Duct size in inches.
- f. Duct area in sq. ft..
- g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
- h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
- i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
- j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
- k. Barometric pressure in psig.

J. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System and air-handling unit identification.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Apparatus used for test.
- d. Area served.
- e. Make.
- f. Number from system diagram.
- g. Type and model number.
- h. Size.
- i. Effective area in sq. ft..

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Air velocity in fpm.
- c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
- d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
- e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
- f. Final velocity in fpm.
- g. Space temperature in deg F.

K. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Room or riser served.
- d. Coil make and size.
- e. Flowmeter type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
- c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
- d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
- e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
- f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

2.12 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of **Architect, Owner, Construction Manager, or commissioning authority**.
- B. **Architect, Owner, Construction Manager, or Commissioning authority** shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:
 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
 3. If the second verification also fails, **Owner, design professional, or Architect** may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

2.13 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulation for HVAC piping systems.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come into contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Calcium Silicate: Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C533, Type I.
 - 1. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
- G. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Comply with ASTM C552.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type II, Class 1, without jacket.
 - 2. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type II, Class 2, with factory-applied **ASJ** or **ASJ-SSL** jacket.
 - 3. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 - 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- H. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type I for tubular materials, Type II for sheet materials.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C547.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type I, Grade A **with factory-applied ASJ or with factory-applied ASJ-SSL**.
 - 2. 850 deg F.
 - 3. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 - 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- J. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C1393.
 - 1. Semirigid board material **with factory-applied ASJ or FSK jacket**.
 - 2. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more.

Formatted: Outline numbered + Level: 6
+ Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1
+ Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.6" + Tab after: 1" + Indent at: 1", Don't adjust space between Latin and Asian text

Formatted: Outline numbered + Level: 6
+ Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1
+ Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.6" + Tab after: 1" + Indent at: 1"

Formatted: Outline numbered + Level: 6
+ Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1
+ Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.6" + Tab after: 1" + Indent at: 1"

Formatted: Outline numbered + Level: 6
+ Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1
+ Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.6" + Tab after: 1" + Indent at: 1", Don't adjust space between Latin and Asian text

- 3. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less.
 - 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- K. Phenolic: Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C1126.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type III, **with factory-applied ASJ**.
 - 2. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 - 3. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- L. Polyisocyanurate: Preformed, rigid cellular polyisocyanurate material intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C591.
 - 1. Preformed insulation **with factory-applied ASJ or with factory-applied ASJ-SSL**.
 - 2. Type IV, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.19 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F after 180 days of aging.
 - 3. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less, and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less for thicknesses of up to 1 inch as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 4. Fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 - 5. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- M. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M or ASTM C1427, Type I, Grade 1, for tubular materials and with Type II, Grade 1, for sheet materials.
- N. Polystyrene: Rigid, extruded cellular polystyrene intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C578, Type IV or Type XIII, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F after 180 days of aging. Fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C195.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C196.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C449.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.
- C. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
- D. Phenolic and Polyisocyanurate Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.

Formatted: Outline numbered + Level: 6
+ Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1
+ Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.6" + Tab after: 1" + Indent at: 1"

Formatted: Outline numbered + Level: 6
+ Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1
+ Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.6" + Tab after: 1" + Indent at: 1"

Formatted: Outline numbered + Level: 6
+ Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1
+ Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.6" + Tab after: 1" + Indent at: 1", Don't adjust space between Latin and Asian text

Formatted: Outline numbered + Level: 6
+ Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1
+ Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.6" + Tab after: 1" + Indent at: 1"

- E. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Solvent-based adhesive.
 - 1. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 2. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F.
 - 4. Color: **Black**.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- G. Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent- or water-based, synthetic resin adhesive with a service temperature range of minus 20 to plus 140 deg F.
- H. , Class 2, Grade A, for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- I. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

2.4 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: **0 to plus 180 deg F or Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F**.
 - 3. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements **with supplier listing on DOD QPD - Qualified Products Database**.
 - 4. Color: **White**.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Indoor Use: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: **White**.
- D. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Outdoor Use: Suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
 - 3. Color: **White**.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96/E96M, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: **0 to plus 180 deg F or Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F**.
 - 3. Color: **White**.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Adhesives shall comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: **20 to plus 180 deg F or 0 to plus 180 deg F.**
 - 3. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Materials shall be as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Joint Sealants:
 - 1. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - a. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 150 to plus 250 deg F or Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.**
 - b. Color: White or gray.
- C. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 3. Color: Aluminum.
- D. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVDC and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 - 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 - 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.

- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 2. Color: **Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect.**
 3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- D. Metal Jacket:
1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. **Factory cut and rolled to size.**
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: **1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.**
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: **3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.**
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.

- 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
2. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A240/A240M.
 - a. **Factory cut and rolled to size**.
 - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: **1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn**.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: **3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn**.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- E. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil-thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane, consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
- F. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross-laminated polyethylene film covered with **white** or **stucco-embossed** aluminum-foil facing.
- G. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil-thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M and with a flame-spread index of 10 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- H. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil-thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M and with a flame-spread index of 25 and a smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- I. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: **3 inches**.
 - 2. Thickness: **11.5 mils**.
 - 3. Adhesion: **90 ounces force/inch** in width.
 - 4. Elongation: **2** percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: **40 lbf/inche** in width.
 - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: **3 inches**.
 - 2. Thickness: **6.5 mils**.
 - 3. Adhesion: **90 ounces force/inch** in width.
 - 4. Elongation: **2** percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: **40 lbf/inch** in width.
 - 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Width: **2 inches**.
 - 2. Thickness: **6 mils**.
 - 3. Adhesion: **64 ounces force/inch** in width.
 - 4. Elongation: **500** percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: **18 lbf/inch** in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: **2 inches**.
 - 2. Thickness: **3.7 mils**.
 - 3. Adhesion: **100 ounces force/inch** in width.
 - 4. Elongation: **5** percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: **34 lbf/inch** in width.
- E. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: **3 inches**.
 - 2. Film Thickness: **2 mils**.
 - 3. Adhesive Thickness: **1.5 mils**.
 - 4. Elongation at Break: **120** percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: **20 psi** in width.
- F. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: **3 inches**.
 - 2. Film Thickness: **6 mils**.
 - 3. Adhesive Thickness: **1.5 mils**.
 - 4. Elongation at Break: **145** percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: **55 psi** in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, **Type 304 or Type 316**; 0.015 inch thick, **1/2 inch or 3/4 inch** wide with **wing seal or closed seal**.
 - 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, **1/2 inch or 3/4 inch** wide with **wing seal or closed seal**.
 - 3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel, with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size is determined by manufacturer for application.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4 inch wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: **0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy or 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel or 0.062-inch soft-annealed, galvanized steel**.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature of between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the tradesman installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.

2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward-clinching staples along edge at **2 inches or 4 inches** o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 25 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least **4 inches** beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, Mechanical Couplings, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, mechanical couplings, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using **preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings** made from same material and density as that of adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with **preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation** of same material and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using **preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation** of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets,

- valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using **preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation** of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers, so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges, mechanical couplings, and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation to fit. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union" matching size and color of pipe labels.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket, except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing, using PVC tape.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as that of adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union at least 2 times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.

5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
3. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as that of pipe insulation.
4. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
3. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
2. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
3. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.

2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.

4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as that of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF PHENOLIC INSULATION

A. General Installation Requirements:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless steel bands at 12-inch intervals.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as that of pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.11 INSTALLATION OF POLYISOCYANURATE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with tape or bands and tighten without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3- and 9-o'clock positions on the pipe.
2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, and same thickness as that of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch thickness.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyisocyanurate block insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of polyisocyanurate insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.12 INSTALLATION OF POLYOLEFIN INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

- 1.** Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

- 1.** Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
- 2.** Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
- 3.** Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
- 4.** Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

- 1.** Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
- 2.** Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

- 1.** Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
- 2.** Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
- 3.** Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- 4.** Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.13 INSTALLATION OF POLYSTYRENE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

- 1.** Secure each layer of insulation with tape or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3- and 9-o'clock positions on the pipe.
- 2.** For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
- 3.** All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, and make thickness same as that of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polystyrene block insulation of same thickness that of pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed section of polystyrene insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.14 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated and for horizontal applications, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof

sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

E. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
2. Wrap factory-presized jackets around individual pipe insulation sections, with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
3. Continuous jacket can be spiral-wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. The 33-1/2-inch-circumference limit allows for 2-inch-overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.15 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below."
1. Flat Acrylic Finish: **Two** finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless steel jackets.

3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections
- E. Tests and Inspections: Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to **three** locations of straight pipe, **three** locations of threaded fittings, **three** locations of welded fittings, **two** locations of threaded strainers, **two** locations of welded strainers, **three** locations of threaded valves, and **three** locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- F. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.17 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Insulation conductivity and thickness per pipe size shall comply with schedules in this Section or with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- B. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Underground piping.
 - 2. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.18 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Fluid Operating Temperature Range below 40 Deg F:
 - 1. Minimum insulation thickness with k value **0.20-0.26 ((Btu*in)/(h*ft^2*F)):**
 - a. **NPS less than 1 inch: 1/2 inch thick.**
 - b. **NPS 1 inch to less than 8 inches: 1 inch thick.**
 - c. **NPS 8 inches or greater: 1 1/2 inch thick.**
- B. Fluid Operating Temperature from **40 Deg F to 60 deg F:**
 - 1. Minimum insulation thickness with k value **0.21-0.27 ((Btu*in)/(h*ft^2*F)):**
 - a. **NPS less than 1 1/2 inches: 1/2 inch thick**
 - b. **NPS 1 1/2 inches or greater: 1 inch thick**

- C. Fluid Operating Temperature from 105 Deg F to 140 deg F:
1. Minimum insulation thickness with k value 0.21-0.28 ((Btu*in)/(h*ft^2*F)):
 - a. NPS less than 1 1/2 inches: 1 inchesthick
 - b. NPS 1 1/2 inches or greater: 1-1/2 inchesthick
- D. Fluid Operating Temperature from 141 Deg F to 200 deg F:
1. Minimum insulation thickness with k value 0.25-0.29 ((Btu*in)/(h*ft^2*F)):
 - a. NPS less than 1 1/2 inches: 1-1/2 inchesthick
 - b. NPS 1 1/2 inches or greater: 2 inchesthick
- E. Fluid Operating Temperature from 201 Deg F to 250 deg F:
1. Minimum insulation thickness with k value 0.27-0.30 ((Btu*in)/(h*ft^2*F)):
 - a. NPS less than 4 inches: 2-1/2 inchesthick
 - b. NPS 4 inches or greater: 3 inchesthick
- F. Fluid Operating Temperature from 251 Deg F to 350 deg F:
1. Minimum insulation thickness with k value 0.29-0.32 ((Btu*in)/(h*ft^2*F)):
 - a. NPS less than 1 inch: 3 inchesthick
 - b. NPS 1 inch to less than 1-1/2 inches: 4 inchesthick
 - c. NPS 1-1/2 inches and greater: 4-1/2 inchesthick
- G. Fluid Operating Temperature from greater than 350 deg F:
1. Minimum insulation thickness with k value 0.32-0.34 ((Btu*in)/(h*ft^2*F)):
 - a. NPS less than 1 inch: 4-1/2 inchesthick
 - b. NPS 1 inch and greater: 5 inchesthick
- H. For insulation outside the state conductivity range, the minimum thickness (T) shall be as follows
1. $T = r\{(1+t/r)K/k-1\}$
 - a. T = minimum insulation thickness
 - b. r = actual outside radius of pipe
 - c. t = insulation thickness listed for applicable fluid temperature and pipe size
 - d. K = conductivity of alternate material at mean rating temperature indicate for the applicable fluid temperature
 - e. k = the upper value of the conductivity range listed in the table for the applicable fluid temperature

3.19 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. None.
 - 2. **PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils or 30 mils** thick.
 - 3. Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch or 0.032 inch or 0.040 inch thick.
 - 4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch or 0.032 inch thick.
 - 5. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth No. 2B Finish or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.010 inch or 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. None.
 - 2. **PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils or 30 mils** thick.
 - 3. Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch or 0.032 inch or 0.040 inch thick.
 - 4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch or 0.032 inch thick.
 - 5. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth No. 2B Finish or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.010 inch or 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch thick.

3.20 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. None.
 - 2. **PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils or 30 mils** thick.
 - 3. Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch or 0.032 inch or 0.040 inch thick.
 - 4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch or 0.032 inch thick.
 - 5. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316 or Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth No. 2B Finish or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.010 inch or 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. **PVC: 20 mils or 30 mils or 40 mils** thick.

2. **Painted Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed or with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch or 0.032 inch or 0.040 inch thick.**
3. **Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316 or Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth No. 2B Finish or Corrugated or Stucco Embossed or with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.010 inch or 0.016 inch or 0.020 inch or 0.024 inch thick.**

3.21 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-APPLIED INSULATION JACKET

- A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 11 23
FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
2. Piping specialties.
3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
4. Manual gas shutoff valves.
5. Motorized gas valves.
6. Earthquake valves.
7. Pressure regulators.
8. Service meters.
9. Dielectric fittings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
1. Piping specialties.
 2. Corrugated, stainless-steel tubing with associated components.
 3. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
 4. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.

5. Dielectric fittings.
- B. Shop Drawings: For facility natural-gas piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
 1. Detail mounting, supports, and valve arrangements for pressure regulator assembly.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For **motorized gas valves, pressure regulators and service meters** to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

- C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.
- D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.
- B. Interruption of Existing Natural-Gas Service: Do not interrupt natural-gas service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of natural-gas supply according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify **Architect, Construction Manager and Owner** no fewer than **two** days in advance of proposed interruption of natural-gas service.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of natural-gas service without **Architect's, Construction Manager's** and **Owner's** written permission.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
 1. Piping and Valves: **100 psig** minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Service Regulators: **65 psig** minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: **0.5 psig or less**.

2.2 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M for butt welding and socket welding.
 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.

4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - a. Material Group: 1.1.
 - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
 - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
 - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
 - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
 5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
 - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
 6. Mechanical Couplings:
 - a. **Stainless-steel** or **Steel** flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
 - b. Buna-nitrile seals.
 - c. **Stainless-steel** or **Steel** bolts, washers, and nuts.
 - d. Coupling shall be capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
 - e. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.
- B. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with **ASTM B88, Type K** or **ASTM B88, Type L** or **ASTM B837, Type G**.
1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
 2. Bronze Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.24, Class 150.
 - a. Gasket Material: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
 - b. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel or stainless steel.
 3. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch thick.
- C. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with **ASTM B88, Type K** or **ASTM B88, Type L** or **ASTM B837, Type G**.
1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
 2. Flare Fittings: Comply with ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.
 - a. Copper fittings with long nuts.
 - b. Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
 - c. Dryseal threads complying with ASME B1.20.3.
 3. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch thick.

2.3 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Maximum Length: 72 inches

B. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.

1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
2. Nitrile seals.
3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.

C. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: **60**-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

D. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: **60**-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

E. T-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
3. Strainer Screen: **60**-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 750 psig.

- F. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

2.5 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
 - 1. CWP Rating: **125 psig**.
 - 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
 - 4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
 - 6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
 - 1. CWP Rating: **125 psig**.
 - 2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
 - 3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- D. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valve with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
 - 1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
 - 2. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - 3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 - 4. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
 - 5. Packing: Separate packnut with adjustable-stem packing threaded ends.

6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 7. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- E. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
 2. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
 3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 4. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
 5. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
 6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 7. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- F. Two-Piece, Regular-Port Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
 2. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
 3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 4. Seats: Reinforced TFE.
 5. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
 6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 7. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- G. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
 2. Plug: Bronze.
 3. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 4. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
 5. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
 6. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 7. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- H. Cast-Iron, Nonlubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
1. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A126, Class B.
 2. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
 3. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
 4. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
 5. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.

- 6. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
 - 7. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
 - 8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- I. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
- 1. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A126, Class B.
 - 2. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
 - 3. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
 - 4. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
 - 5. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 6. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
 - 7. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
 - 8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- J. PE Ball Valves: Comply with ASME B16.40.
- 1. Body: PE.
 - 2. Ball: PE.
 - 3. Stem: Acetal.
 - 4. Seats and Seals: Nitrile.
 - 5. Ends: Plain or fusible to match piping.
 - 6. CWP Rating: **80 psig.**
 - 7. Operating Temperature: **Minus 20 to plus 140 deg F.**
 - 8. Operator: Nut or flat head for key operation.
 - 9. Include plastic valve extension.
 - 10. Include tamperproof locking feature for valves where indicated on Drawings.
- K. Valve Boxes:
- 1. Cast-iron, two-section box.
 - 2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
 - 3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches in diameter.
 - 4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
 - 5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head, and with stem of length required to operate valve.

2.6 MOTORIZED GAS VALVES

- A. Automatic Gas Valves: Comply with ANSI Z21.21.
- 1. Body: Brass or aluminum.
 - 2. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
 - 3. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
 - 4. Normally closed.
 - 5. Visual position indicator.
 - 6. **Electrical or Mechanical** operator for actuation by appliance automatic shutoff device.

- B. Electrically Operated Valves: Comply with UL 429.
1. Pilot operated.
 2. Body: Brass or aluminum.
 3. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
 4. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
 5. 120-V ac, 60 Hz, Class B, continuous-duty molded coil, and replaceable.
 6. NEMA ICS 6, Type 4, coil enclosure.
 7. Normally closed.
 8. Visual position indicator.

2.7 PRESSURE REGULATORS

- A. General Requirements:
1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
 2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
 3. Elevation compensator.
 4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- B. Service Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
 2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
 3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
 4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
 5. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
 6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
 7. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
 8. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
 9. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
 10. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
 11. Maximum Inlet Pressure: **100 psig**.
- C. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
 2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
 3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
 4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
 5. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
 6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
 7. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
 8. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
 9. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.

10. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
 11. Maximum Inlet Pressure: **2 psig**
- D. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.
1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
 2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
 3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
 4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
 5. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
 6. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
 7. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 8. Maximum Inlet Pressure: **1 psig**

2.8 SERVICE METERS

- A. Diaphragm-Type Service Meters: Comply with [ANSI B109.1] [ANSI B109.2].
1. Case: Die-cast aluminum.
 2. Connections: Steel threads.
 3. Diaphragm: Synthetic fabric.
 4. Diaphragm Support Bearings: Self-lubricating.
 5. Compensation: Continuous temperature **and pressure**.
 6. Meter Index: **Cubic feet**.
 7. Meter Case and Index: Tamper resistant.
 8. Remote meter reader compatible.
 9. Maximum Inlet Pressure: **100 psig**
 10. Pressure Loss: Maximum **0.5-inch wg**.
 11. Accuracy: Maximum plus or minus **1.0** percent.
- B. Rotary-Type Service Meters: Comply with ANSI B109.3.
1. Case: Extruded aluminum.
 2. Connection: Flange.
 3. Impellers: Polished aluminum.
 4. Rotor Bearings: Self-lubricating.
 5. Compensation: Continuous temperature **and pressure**.
 6. Meter Index: **Cubic feet**.
 7. Tamper resistant.
 8. Remote meter reader compatible.
 9. Maximum Inlet Pressure: **100 psig**
 10. Accuracy: Maximum plus or minus **2.0** percent.
- C. Turbine Meters: Comply with ASME MFC-4M.
1. Housing: Cast iron or welded steel.
 2. Connection Threads or Flanges: Steel.
 3. Turbine: Aluminum or plastic.
 4. Turbine Bearings: Self-lubricating.
 5. Compensation: Continuous temperature **and pressure**.
 6. Meter Index: **Cubic feet**.
 7. Tamper resistant.

8. Remote meter reader compatible.
 9. Maximum Inlet Pressure: **100 psig**.
 10. Accuracy: Maximum plus or minus **2.0** percent.
- D. Service-Meter Bars:
1. Malleable- or cast-iron frame for supporting service meter.
 2. Include offset swivel pipes, meter nuts with o-ring seal, and factory- or field-installed dielectric unions.
 3. Omit meter offset swivel pipes if service-meter bar dimensions match service-meter connections.
- E. Service-Meter Bypass Fittings:
1. Ferrous, tee, pipe fitting with capped side inlet for temporary natural-gas supply.
 2. Integral ball-check bypass valve.

2.9 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: **150 psig**
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - c. Pressure Rating: **150 psig**
 - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
1. Description:
 - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - b. Pressure Rating: **150 psig**
 - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

2.10 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick,

continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to **NFPA 54** and **the International Fuel Gas Code** to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with **NFPA 54** and **the International Fuel Gas Code** requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

3.3 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with **NFPA 54** and **the International Fuel Gas Code** for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least **36 inches** below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
 - 1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
- C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D2774.
- D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
 - 1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
 - 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
 - 3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.
- E. Copper Tubing with Protective Coating:
 - 1. Apply joint cover kits over tubing to cover, seal, and protect joints.
 - 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.

- F. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- G. Install pressure gage **downstream** from each service regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.4 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with **NFPA 54** and **the International Fuel Gas Code** for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
 - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

- O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
 - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
 - 2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
 - 3. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
 - 4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
 - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
- 5. Prohibited Locations:
 - a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
 - b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- T. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- V. Install pressure gage **downstream** from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

- X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.5 SERVICE-METER ASSEMBLY INSTALLATION

- A. Install service-meter assemblies aboveground, **on concrete bases**.
- B. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service regulators. Shutoff valves are not required at second regulators if two regulators are installed in series.
- C. Install strainer on inlet of service-pressure regulator and meter set.
- D. Install service regulators mounted outside with vent outlet horizontal or facing down. Install screen in vent outlet if not integral with service regulator.
- E. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service meters. Install dielectric fittings downstream from service meters.
- F. Install service meters downstream from pressure regulators.
- G. Install metal bollards to protect meter assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for pipe bollards.

3.6 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.
- E. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

3.7 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:

1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Welded Joints:

1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.

F. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

G. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.

H. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D2657.

1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

3.8 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install hangers for **steel piping and copper tubing**, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Install hangers for corrugated stainless-steel tubing, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- E. Support horizontal piping within **12 inches** of each fitting.

- F. Support vertical runs of **steel piping and copper tubing** to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- G. Support vertical runs of corrugated stainless-steel tubing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.9 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

3.10 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.
- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.11 PAINTING

- A. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
 - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (**flat**) or (**semigloss**) or (**gloss**).
 - d. Color: **Gray**.
 - B. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
 - 1. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.

- a. Prime Coat: **Alkyd anticorrosive** or **Quick-drying alkyd** metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex (**flat**) or (**low sheen**) or (**eggshell**) or (**satin**) or (**semigloss**) or (**gloss**).
 - d. Color: **Gray**.
2. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1E.
 - a. Prime Coat: **Alkyd anticorrosive** or **Quick-drying alkyd** metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd (**flat**) or (**eggshell**) or (**semigloss**) or (**gloss**).
 - d. Color: **Gray**.
- C. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

3.12 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base **according to seismic codes at Project**.
 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on **18-inch** centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 6. Use **3000-psig**, 28-day, compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to **NFPA 54** or **the International Fuel Gas Code** and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.14 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain earthquake valves.

3.15 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Underground natural-gas piping shall be **one of** the following:
 1. PE pipe and fittings joined by heat fusion, or mechanical couplings; service-line risers with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.
 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints, or mechanical couplings. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
 3. **Annealed** or **Drawn**-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for copper tubing.
- B. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be **one of** the following:
 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
 3. **Annealed** or **Drawn**-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
- C. Branch Piping in Cast-in-Place Concrete to Single Appliance: Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and **brazed** or **flared** joints. Install piping embedded in concrete with no joints in concrete.
- D. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.16 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, branch piping[NPS 1 and smaller shall be **one of** the following:
 1. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
 2. Annealed-temper, tin-lined copper tube with flared joints and fittings.
 3. Annealed-temper, copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and **brazed** or **flared** joints.
 4. Aluminum tube with flared fittings and joints.
 5. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be **one of** the following:
 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
 3. Drawn-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
- C. Underground, below building, piping shall be **one of** the following:
 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

- D. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- E. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.17 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES MORE THAN 0.5 PSIG AND LESS THAN 5 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be **one of** the following:
 - 1. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
 - 2. Annealed-temper, tin-lined copper tube with flared joints and fittings.
 - 3. Annealed-temper, copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and **brazed** or **flared** joints.
 - 4. Aluminum tube with flared fittings and joints.
 - 5. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be **one of** the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with steel welding fittings and welded joints.
 - 3. Drawn-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
- C. Underground, below building, piping shall be **one of** the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- D. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- E. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.18 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter shall be **one of** the following:
 - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
 - 2. Two-piece, **full** or **regular**-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 - 3. Bronze plug valve.
- B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger at service meter shall be **one of** the following:
 - 1. Two-piece, **full** or **regular**-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 - 2. Bronze plug valve.
 - 3. Cast-iron, nonlubricated plug valve.

- C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller shall be **one of** the following:
1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
 2. Two-piece, **full or regular**-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 3. Bronze plug valve.
- D. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be **one of** the following:
1. Two-piece, **full or regular**-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 2. Bronze plug valve.
 3. Cast-iron, **nonlubricated or lubricated** plug valve.
- E. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be **one of** the following:
1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
 2. Two-piece, **full or regular**-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 3. Bronze plug valve.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 21 13

HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Copper tube and fittings.
2. Steel pipe and fittings.
3. Plastic pipe and fittings.
4. Fiberglass pipe and fittings.
5. Joining materials.
6. Transition fittings.
7. Dielectric fittings.
8. Bypass chemical feeder.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Pipe and tube.
2. Fittings.
3. Joining materials.
4. Transition fittings.
5. Bypass chemical feeder.

- B. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.
3. Locations of and details for penetrations, including sleeves and sleeve seals for exterior walls, floors, basement, and foundation walls.
4. Locations of and details for penetration and firestopping for fire- and smoke-rated wall and floor and ceiling assemblies.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Preconstruction Test Reports:
 - 1. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.
 - 2. Fiberglass Pipe and Fitting Installers: Installers of RTRF and RTRP shall be certified by manufacturer of pipes and fittings as having been trained and qualified to join fiberglass piping with manufacturer-recommended adhesive.
- B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.
 - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: **Engage** a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on water quality.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. PP-R Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace PP-R pipe and fittings that fail in materials or workmanship within 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

1. Warranty is to cover labor and material costs of repairing and/or replacing defective materials and repairing any incidental damage caused by failure of the piping system due to defects in materials or manufacturing.
2. Warranty is to be in effect only upon submission by the Contractor to the manufacturer of valid pressure/leak documentation indicating that the system was tested and passed the manufacturer's pressure/leak test.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: **100 psig at 200 deg F.**
 2. Condenser-Water Piping: **150 psig at 73 deg F.**
 3. Makeup-Water Piping: **80 psig or 150 psig at 73 deg F or 150 deg F**
 4. Blowdown-Drain Piping: **200 deg F**
 5. Air-Vent Piping: **200 deg F.**
 6. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: **ASTM B88, Type K, ASTM B88, Type L and ASTM B88, Type M.**
- B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: **ASTM B88, Type K, ASTM B88, Type L and ASTM B88, Type M.**
- C. DWV Copper Tube: ASTM B306, Type DWV.
- D. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- E. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, pressure fittings.
- F. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- G. Cast Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- H. Wrought Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- I. Copper-Tube, Mechanically Formed Tee Fitting: For forming T-branch on copper water tube.
 1. Description: Tee formed in copper tube in accordance with ASTM F2014.
- J. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Copper Tube Appurtenances:
 1. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B75, copper tube or ASTM B584, bronze castings.

2. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: To fit copper-tube dimensions; rigid pattern unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting EPDM-rubber gasket rated for minimum **230 deg F** for use with ferrous housing, and steel bolts and nuts; 300 psigminimum CWP pressure rating.
- K. Copper-Tube, Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
1. Fittings: Cast-brass, cast-bronze, or wrought-copper with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
 2. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.

2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 1. Material Group: 1.1.
 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
 3. Facings: Raised face.
- H. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
 1. Joint Fittings: ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A47/A47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A53/A53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A106/A106M, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
 2. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and **EPDM or nitrile** gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
- I. Plain-End Mechanical-Joint Couplings:
 1. Housing: ASTM A536 Grade 65-45-12 segmented ductile iron or type 304 stainless steel.
 2. Housing coating: **None**
 3. Gasket: **EPDM or NBR**.
 4. Sealing Mechanism: Double-lip sealing system or carbon steel case-hardened jaws.

- 5. Bolts, hex nuts, washers, or lock bars based on manufacturer's design.
 - 6. Minimum Pressure Rating: Equal to that of the joined pipes.
- J. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings:
1. Housing: Steel.
 2. O-Rings and Pipe Stop: EPDM.
 3. Tools: Manufacturer's special tool.
 4. Minimum 300-psig working-pressure rating at 230 deg F.
- K. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

2.4 PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. CPVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM F441/F441M, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
 - 1. CPVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM F438 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM F439 for Schedule 80 pipe.
- B. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D1785, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
 - 1. PVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM D2466 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM D2467 for Schedule 80 pipe.
- C. Polypropylene (PP-R) Pipe:
- D. Polypropylene Pipe: ASTM F2389, pipe pressure rating to comply with temperature and pressure ratings of code requirements for the applicable service.
 - 1. Polypropylene Fittings: ASTM F2389, socket fusion, butt fusion, electrofusion, or fusion outlet fittings to be used for fusion-welded joints between pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Mechanical fittings and transition fittings to be used where transitions are made to other piping materials or to valves and appurtenances.
 - 3. Polypropylene pipe is to be unthreaded. Threaded transition fittings per ASTM F2389 to be used where a threaded connection is required.
- E. Smoke and Fire Ratings:
 - 1. Where indicated on the Drawings that a plenum-rated piping system is required, the pipe is to be wrapped and/or insulated with fiberglass or mineral wool pipe insulation, field installed.
 - a. The system is to have a flame spread classification of less than 25 and smoke development rating of less than 50.
 - b. Pipe, wrap, or insulation as a system to meet the requirements of CAN/ULC-S102.2-03, ASTM E84 or UL 2846.
 - c. For insulation required for thermal and condensation reasons, see Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

2.5 FIBERGLASS PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. RTRP: ASTM D2996, filament-wound pipe with tapered bell and spigot ends for adhesive joints.
- B. RTRF: Compression or spray-up/contact molded of same material, pressure class, and joining method as pipe.
- C. Flanges: ASTM D4024. Full-face gaskets suitable for the service, minimum 1/8-inch thick, 60-70 durometer. ASTM A307, Grade B, hex head bolts with washers.

2.6 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- G. Solvent Cements for CPVC Piping: ASTM F493.
- H. Solvent Cements for PVC Piping: ASTM D2564. Include primer according to ASTM F656.
- I. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

2.7 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
 - 1. One-piece fitting with one threaded brass or copper insert and one solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:

1. Brass or copper end, solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material, rubber gasket, and threaded union.

2.8 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: **150 psig**
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - c. Pressure Rating: **150 psig**
 - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 1. Description:
 - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - b. Pressure Rating: **150 psig**
 - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Nipples:
 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
 - b. Electroplated steel nipple, complying with ASTM F1545.
 - c. Pressure Rating: **300 psig at 225 deg F**
 - d. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
 - e. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.9 BYPASS CHEMICAL FEEDER

- A. Description: Welded steel construction; 125-psig working pressure; 5-gal. capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.
 1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, **NPS 2 and smaller**, shall be **any of** the following:
 - 1. **Type L or Type M**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and **soldered or brazed or pressure-seal** joints.
 - 2. **Schedule 40**, Grade B steel pipe; **Class 125, cast-iron or Class 150, malleable-iron** or **Class 250, cast-iron or Class 300, malleable-iron** fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 3. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.
 - 4. **Schedule 40 or Schedule 80** CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
- B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, **NPS 2-1/2 and larger**, shall be **any of** the following:
 - 1. **Type L or Type M**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and **soldered or brazed** joints.
 - 2. **Schedule 40** steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
 - 3. **Schedule 40** steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
 - 4. **Schedule 40** steel pipe, plain-end mechanical-coupled joints.
- C. Hot-water heating piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be **either of** the following:
 - 1. Type K, **drawn- or annealed-temper** copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and **soldered or brazed** joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
 - 2. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
- D. Condenser-water piping, aboveground, **NPS 2 and smaller**, shall be **any of** the following:
 - 1. **Type L or Type M**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and **soldered or brazed or pressure-seal** joints.
 - 2. **Schedule 80 or Schedule 40** steel pipe; **Class 125, cast-iron or Class 150, malleable-iron** or **Class 250, cast-iron or Class 300, malleable-iron** fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 3. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.
 - 4. **Schedule 40 or Schedule 80** CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
 - 5. PP-R plastic piping and fittings with heat fusion joints.
- E. Condenser-water piping, aboveground, **NPS 2-1/2 and larger**, shall be **any of** the following:
 - 1. **Type L or Type M**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and **soldered or brazed** joints.
 - 2. **Schedule 80 or Schedule 40** steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
 - 3. **Schedule 80 or Schedule 40** steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.

4. **Schedule 40** steel pipe, plain-end mechanical-coupled joints.
- F. Condenser-water piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be **either of** the following:
 1. Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and **soldered** or **brazed** joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
- G. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be [**either of**] the following:
 1. **Type L or Type M**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and **soldered** or **brazed** joints.
- H. Makeup-Water Piping Installed Belowground and within Slabs: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
- I. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.
- J. Air-Vent Piping:
 1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.
- K. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using **mechanically formed** tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- P. Install unions in piping, **NPS 2** and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- Q. Install flanges in piping, **NPS 2-1/2** and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- S. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B32.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- H. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2846/D2846M Appendix.
 3. PVC Pressure Piping: Join ASTM D1785 schedule number, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D2672. Join other-than-schedule number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D2855.
 4. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D2855.
- I. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
- J. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.
- K. Plain-End Mechanical-Coupled Joints: Prepare, assemble, and test joints in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- L. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tools and procedure, and brazed joints.
- M. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tools and procedure. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 2** and Smaller: Use dielectric **nipples** or **unions**.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4**: Use dielectric **flanges** or **flange kits** or **nipples**.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 5** and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.
- C. Install hangers for **copper tubing and steel piping**, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Install hangers for plastic piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- E. Install hangers for fiberglass piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- F. Support horizontal piping within **12 inches** of each fitting and coupling.
- G. Support vertical runs of **copper tubing and steel piping** to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- H. Support vertical runs of **CPVC, PVC and PP-R** piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- I. Support vertical runs of fiberglass piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.

3.7 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the following water characteristics:
 1. pH: **9.0 to 10.5**.

2. "P" Alkalinity: **100 to 500** ppm.
 3. Boron: **100 to 200** ppm.
 4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maximum of **100** ppm. Revise this value if closed system contains glycol.
 5. Corrosion Inhibitor:
 - a. Sodium Nitrate: **1000 to 1500** ppm.
 - b. Molybdate: **200 to 300** ppm.
 - c. Chromate: **200 to 300** ppm.
 - d. Sodium Nitrate Plus Molybdate: **100 to 200** ppm each.
 - e. Chromate Plus Molybdate: **50 to 100** ppm each.
 6. Soluble Copper: Maximum of **0.20** ppm.
 7. Tolyiriazole Copper and Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Minimum of **10** ppm.
 8. Total Suspended Solids: Maximum of **10** ppm.
 9. Ammonia: Maximum of **20** ppm.
 10. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maximum of **20** ppm.
 11. Microbiological Limits:
 - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maximum of **1000** organisms/mL.
 - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maximum of **100** organisms/mL.
 - c. Nitrate Reducers: **100** organisms/mL.
 - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maximum of **zero** organisms/mL.
 - e. Iron Bacteria: Maximum of **zero** organisms/mL.
- B. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated.
1. Install in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches above the floor.
 2. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections.
 3. Install NPS 3/4 pipe from chemical feeder drain to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.
- C. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.
- D. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:

1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
 3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
 5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
 2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
 3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
 4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
 5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
 6. Prepare written report of testing.
- C. Perform the following before operating the system:
1. Open manual valves fully.
 2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
 3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
 4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
 5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
 6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
 7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 232123 - HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.
- B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pump. Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each pump.
 - 1. Show pump layout and connections.
 - 2. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLOSE-COUPLED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically.
- B. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Maximum Operating Pressure: **175 psig**
 - 2. Maximum Continuous Operating Temperature: **250 deg F**
 - 3. Inlet and Outlet Size: **2 Inches NPT**.
 - 4. Impeller Size: **2x2x7**.
 - 5. Motor Speed: **1750 rpm**.
 - 6. Motor Horsepower: 1.5HP.
 - 7. Electrical Characteristics:
 - a. Volts: **match existing**.
 - b. Hertz: 60.
- C. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, **replaceable bronze wear rings**, and threaded **companion-flange** connections.
 - 2. Impeller: ASTM B584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For constant-speed pumps, trim impeller to match specified performance.
 - 3. Pump Shaft: **Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve or Stainless steel**.
 - 4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and **Buna-N** or **EPT** or **Viton** bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 - 5. Seal: Packing seal consisting of stuffing box with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
 - 6. Pump Bearings: **Permanently lubricated ball bearings**.
- D. Motor: Single speed and rigidly mounted to pump casing.
 - 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - a. Enclosure: **Totally enclosed, air over** or **Totally enclosed, nonventilated**

- b. Retain "Enclosure Materials," "Motor Bearings," "Unusual Service Conditions," "Efficiency," "NEMA Design," and "Service Factor" subparagraphs below if options are available from pump manufacturers and are different from default requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment." Consider each subparagraph and retain only those that vary from default requirements.
- c. Enclosure Materials: **Cast iron or Rolled steel.**
- d. Motor Bearings: **Permanently lubricated** ball bearings.
- e. Efficiency: Premium efficient.

2.2 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

- A. Suction Diffuser:
 - 1. Angle pattern.
 - 2. **175-psig** pressure rating, **cast-iron** body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting.
 - 3. Bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers.
 - 4. Bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes.
 - 5. Drain plug.
 - 6. Factory-fabricated support.
- B. Triple-Duty Valve:
 - 1. Angle or straight pattern.
 - 2. **175-psig** pressure rating, **cast-iron** body, pump-discharge fitting.
 - 3. Drain plug and bronze-fitted shutoff, balancing, and check valve features.
 - 4. Brass gage ports with integral check valve and orifice for flow measurement.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- ### 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.
 - C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.
 - D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with **HI 1.4 and HI 2.4.**

- B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
- C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.
- D. Automatic Condensate Pump Units: Install units for collecting condensate and extend to open drain.
- E. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install base-mounted pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 - 3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- F. Equipment Mounting: Install in-line pumps with continuous-thread hanger rods and **elastomeric hangers** of size required to support weight of in-line pumps.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.3 ALIGNMENT

- A. **Perform** alignment service.
- B. Comply with requirements in Hydronics Institute standards for alignment of pump and motor shaft. Add shims to the motor feet and bolt motor to base frame. Do not use grout between motor feet and base frame.
- C. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.
- D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 232123 "Hydronic Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to pump, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.

- D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
- E. Install **check, shutoff, and throttling valves or triple-duty valve** on discharge side of pumps.
- F. Install **Y-type strainer** and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.
- G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.
- H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge or at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple-input selector valve.
- I. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.
- J. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. **Perform** startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 - 4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 - 5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 - 6. Start motor.
 - 7. Open discharge valve slowly.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. **Train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
3. Refrigerants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve, refrigerant piping, and piping specialty.

1. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
 - a. Thermostatic expansion valves.
 - b. Solenoid valves.
 - c. Hot-gas bypass valves.
 - d. Filter dryers.
 - e. Strainers.
 - f. Pressure-regulating valves.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes; flow capacities; valve arrangements and locations; slopes of horizontal runs; oil traps; double risers; wall and floor penetrations; and equipment connection details.
2. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
3. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
4. Shop Drawing Scale: **[1/4 inch equals 1 foot]**

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.7 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-134a:
 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 115 psig.
 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 225 psig.
 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 225 psig.
- B. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-407C:
 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 230 psig.
 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 380 psig.
 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 380 psig.
- C. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: **ASTM B 88, Type K or L or ASTM B 280, Type ACR.**

- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
 - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
 - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
 - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
 - 4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
 - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.
- G. Copper Pressure-Seal Fittings for Refrigerant Piping:
 - 1. Housing: Copper
 - 2. O-Rings: HNBR or compatible with specific refrigerant.
 - 3. Tools: Manufacturer's approved special tools.
 - 4. Minimum Rated Pressure: 700 psig.

2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; type, grade, and wall thickness as selected in piping application articles.
- B. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, for welded joints.
- C. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, steel, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets, bevel-welded end connection, and raised face.
- D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- E. Flanged Unions:
 - 1. Body: Forged-steel flanges for NPS 1 to NPS 1-1/2 and ductile iron for NPS 2 to NPS 3. Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
 - 2. Gasket: Fiber asbestos free.
 - 3. Fasteners: Four plated-steel bolts, with silicon bronze nuts. Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
 - 4. End Connections: Brass tailpiece adapters for solder-end connections to copper tubing.
 - 5. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
 - 6. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 400 psig.
 - 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 330 deg F.

F. Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, stainless-steel-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
2. End Connections:
 - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: With threaded-end connections.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: With flanged-end connections.
3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.4 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
4. Seat: Nylon.
5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

B. Packed-Angle Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
3. Operator: Rising stem.
4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

C. Check Valves:

1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

D. Service Valves:

1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.

3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Copper spring.
 5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
- E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by a National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).
1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
 2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Threaded.
 5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and **24 or 115 or 208**-V ac coil.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
 2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Threaded.
 5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
 2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
 4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
 5. Suction Temperature: **40 deg F**
 6. Superheat: **Nonadjustable**.
 7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
 8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
 9. Working Pressure Rating: **700 psig or 450 psig**
- H. Hot-Gas Bypass Valves: Comply with UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Ductile iron or steel.
 2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
 4. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
 5. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 6. Equalizer: **Internal or External**.
 7. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter and **24 or 115 or 208**-V ac coil.
 8. End Connections: Socket.
 9. Throttling Range: Maximum 5 psig.
 10. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- I. Straight-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.

2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
 3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- J. Angle-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
 2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
 3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
 4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- K. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:
1. Body: Forged brass.
 2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
 3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
 4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
 5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- L. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.
1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
 2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
 3. Desiccant Media: Activated **alumina** or **charcoal**.
 4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
 5. End Connections: Socket.
 6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
 7. Maximum Pressure Loss: **2 psig**
 8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- M. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.
1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
 2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
 3. Desiccant Media: Activated **alumina** or **charcoal**.
 4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
 5. End Connections: Socket.
 6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
 7. Maximum Pressure Loss: **2 psig**
 8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- N. Mufflers:
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.

2. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- O. Receivers: Comply with AHRI 495.
1. Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
 2. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
 3. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
 4. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.
 5. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- P. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with AHRI 495.
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
 2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
 3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

2.5 REFRIGERANTS

- A. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

- A. Suction Lines **NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller** for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with **brazed or soldered** joints.
- B. Suction Lines **NPS 3-1/2 and Smaller** for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, **Type ACR or Type L**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with **brazed or soldered** joints.
- C. Suction Lines **NPS 4 and Smaller** for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, **Type ACR or Type K or Type L**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.
- D. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, **and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications**: Copper, **Type ACR, Type L**, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with **brazed or soldered** joints.
- E. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, **and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications**: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with **brazed or soldered** joints.

- F. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR or Type K or Type L, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.
- G. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR or Type K or Type L, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.
- H. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications:
 1. NPS 5/8 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR or Type L, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with **brazed or soldered** joints.
 2. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1 and Smaller: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with **brazed or soldered** joints.
 3. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR or Type K or Type L, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.
 4. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 2: Copper, Type ACR or Type K or Type L, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.
- I. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications NPS 2 to NPS 4: Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.
- J. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR or Type L, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with **brazed or soldered** joints.
- K. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with **brazed or soldered** joints.
- L. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR or Type K or Type L, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.
- M. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR or Type K or Type L, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.
- N. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping:
 1. NPS 5/8 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR or Type L, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with **brazed or soldered** joints.
 2. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1 and Smaller: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with **brazed or soldered** joints.
 3. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR or Type K or Type L, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.
 4. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 2: Copper, Type ACR or Type K or Type L, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.
- O. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping NPS 2 to NPS 4: Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.

3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install **diaphragm packless** or **packed-angle** valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
- B. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- D. Except as otherwise indicated, install **diaphragm packless** or **packed-angle** valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
- E. Install a full-size, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
 - 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
 - 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
 - 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- H. Install safety relief valves where required by 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for the device being protected:
 - 1. Solenoid valves.
 - 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
 - 3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
 - 4. Compressor.
- K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve, **and in the suction line at the compressor**.
- L. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.
- M. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- L. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- N. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
 - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
 - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- O. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.

- P. Before installation of steel refrigerant piping, clean pipe and fittings using the following procedures:
1. Shot blast the interior of piping.
 2. Remove coarse particles of dirt and dust by drawing a clean, lintless cloth through tubing by means of a wire or electrician's tape.
 3. Draw a clean, lintless cloth saturated with trichloroethylene through the tube or pipe. Continue this procedure until cloth is not discolored by dirt.
 4. Draw a clean, lintless cloth, saturated with compressor oil, squeezed dry, through the tube or pipe to remove remaining lint. Inspect tube or pipe visually for remaining dirt and lint.
 5. Finally, draw a clean, dry, lintless cloth through the tube or pipe.
 6. Safety-relief-valve discharge piping is not required to be cleaned but is required to be open to allow unrestricted flow.
- Q. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- R. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- D. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
 2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread steel pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and to restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Steel pipe can be threaded, but threaded joints must be seal brazed or seal welded.

- H. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12.
- I. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for **copper tubing and steel piping**, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping within **12 inches** of each fitting.
- E. Support vertical runs of **copper tubing and steel piping** to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Double-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
3. Single-wall round[**and flat-oval**] ducts and fittings.
4. Double-wall round[**and flat-oval**] ducts and fittings.
5. Sheet metal materials.
6. Duct liner.
7. Sealants and gaskets.
8. Hangers and supports.
9. Seismic-restraint devices.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (State of California).

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.
3. Seismic-restraint devices.

- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.

2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
3. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
4. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
5. Laboratory Test Reports: For antimicrobial coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top **and bottom** of ducts.
5. Dimensions of **all** duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, **seismic restraints**, and vibration isolation.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: A single set of plans or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
 1. **AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.**
 2. **AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.**

3. AWS D9.1/D9.1M, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and with performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports **and seismic restraints** shall withstand the effects of gravity **and seismic** loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" **and ASCE/SEI 7. Seismically brace duct hangers and supports in accordance with SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."**
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Startup."
- E. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
- F. Duct Dimensions: Unless otherwise indicated, all duct dimensions indicated on Drawings are inside clear dimensions and do not include insulation or duct wall thickness.

2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For ducts exposed to weather, construct of **Type 304** or **Type 316** stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
- B. Transverse Joints: Fabricate joints in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. For ducts with longest side less than 36 inches, select joint types in accordance with Figure 2-1.
 - 2. For ducts with longest side 36 inches or greater, use flange joint connector Type T-22, T-24, T-24A, T-25a, or T-25b. Factory-fabricated flanged duct connection system may be used if submitted and approved by engineer of record.

- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-oval DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For ducts exposed to weather, construct of **Type 304** or **Type 316** stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).
- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than **60** Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
 - 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: **G60 or G90**.
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. PVC-Coated, Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: **G60 or G90**.
 - 2. Minimum Thickness for Factory-Applied PVC Coating: 4 mils thick **on sheet metal surface of ducts and fittings exposed to corrosive conditions, and minimum 1 mil thick on opposite surface**.
 - 3. Coating Materials: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on ducts listed and labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A1008/A1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A480/A480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- F. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- G. Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:
 - 1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating shall be applied to the exterior surface.
 - 2. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
 - 3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound shall have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3363.
 - 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
 - 5. Shop-Applied Coating Color: **Black or White**.
 - 6. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.
- H. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
 - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.

- I. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch-minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch-minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.5 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
 - a. Type I, Flexible: **0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F** at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - b. Type II, Rigid: **0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F** at 75 deg F mean temperature.
2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
3. **Solvent** or **Water**-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C916.
 - a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

- B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
2. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

- C. Fiberglass-Free Duct Liner: Made from partially recycled cotton or polyester products and containing no fiberglass. Airstream surface overlaid with fire-resistant facing to prevent surface erosion by airstream, complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B. Treat natural-fiber products with antimicrobial coating.

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: **0.24 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F** at 75 deg F mean temperature when tested in accordance with ASTM C518.
2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84; certified by an NRTL.
3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

- a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
- b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

D. Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, **0.106-inch**-or **0.135-inch**-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick **galvanized steel** or **aluminum** or **stainless steel**; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

E. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm or greater.
7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
 - a. Fan discharges.
 - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
 - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
 - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.

10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.6 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:

1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
2. Tape Width: **3 inches or 4 inches or 6 inches**.
3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
10. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.

5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
 6. Water resistant.
 7. Mold and mildew resistant.
 8. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
 9. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 10. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
 11. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 12. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
 2. Type: S.
 3. Grade: NS.
 4. Class: 25.
 5. Use: O.
 6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
 3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.7 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Galvanized-steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A492.

- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
 - 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
 - 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

2.8 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by **an evaluation service member of the ICC Evaluation Service or an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction**.
- 1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least **four** times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- B. Channel Support System: Shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces and with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end. Include matching components and corrosion-resistant coating.
- C. Restraint Cables: **ASTM A603, galvanized** or **ASTM A492, stainless**-steel cables with end connections made of galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with an automatic-locking and clamping device or double-cable clips.
- D. Hanger Rod Stiffener: **Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections** or **Reinforcing steel angle clamped** to hanger rod.
- E. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and coordination drawings.

- B. Install ducts in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths with fewest possible joints.
- D. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- G. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- H. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- I. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- J. Install fire, **combination fire/smoke**, and smoke dampers where indicated on Drawings and as required by code, and by local authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and specific installation requirements of the damper UL listing.
- K. Install heating coils, cooling coils, air filters, dampers, and all other duct-mounted accessories in air ducts where indicated on Drawings.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials both before and after installation. **Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."**
- M. Elbows: Use long-radius elbows wherever they fit.
 - 1. Fabricate 90-degree rectangular mitered elbows to include turning vanes.
 - 2. Fabricate 90-degree round elbows with a minimum of three segments for 12 inches and smaller and a minimum of five segments for 14 inches and larger.
- N. Branch Connections: Use lateral or conical branch connections.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR TYPE 1 COMMERCIAL KITCHEN GREASE HOOD EXHAUST DUCT

- A. Install ducts in accordance with NFPA 96, "Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operation"; SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; and SMACNA's "Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines" unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install all ducts without dips and traps that may hold grease, and sloped a minimum of 2 percent to drain grease back to the hood.
- C. All ducts exposed to view shall be constructed of stainless steel as per "Duct Schedule" Article. All ducts concealed from view shall be **stainless** or **carbon** steel as per "Duct Schedule" Article.
- D. All joints shall be welded and shall be telescoping, bell, or flange joint as per NFPA 96.
- E. Install fire-rated access panel assemblies at each change in direction and at maximum intervals of **20**feet in horizontal ducts, and at every floor for vertical ducts, or as indicated on Drawings.
- F. Do not penetrate fire-rated assemblies except as allowed by applicable building codes and authorities having jurisdiction.

3.4 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR EXHAUST DUCTS SERVING COMMERCIAL DISHWASHERS AND OTHER HIGH-HUMIDITY LOCATIONS

- A. Install dishwasher exhaust ducts and other exhaust ducts from wet, high-humidity locations without dips and traps that may hold water. Slope ducts a minimum of 2 percent back to dishwasher or toward drain.
- B. Provide a drain pocket at each low point and at the base of each riser with a 1-inchtrapped copper drain from each drain pocket to open site floor drain.
- C. Minimize number of transverse seams.
- D. Do not locate longitudinal seams on bottom of duct.

3.5 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR LABORATORY EXHAUST AND FUME HOOD EXHAUST DUCTS

- A. Install ducts in accordance with NFPA 45, "Fire Protection for Laboratories Using Chemicals."
- B. Install exhaust ducts without dips and traps that may hold water. Slope ducts a minimum of 2 percent back to hood or inlet. Where indicated on Drawings, install trapped drain piping.
- C. Connect duct to fan, fume hood, and other equipment indicated on Drawings.

3.6 DUCTWORK EXPOSED TO WEATHER

- A. All external joints are to **have secure watertight mechanical connections**. Seal all openings to provide weatherproof construction.
- B. Construct ductwork to resist external loads of wind, snow, ice, and other effects of weather. Provide necessary supporting structures.
- C. Single Wall:
 - 1. Ductwork shall be **Type 304** or **Type 316** stainless steel.
 - 2. Ductwork shall be galvanized steel.
 - a. If duct outer surface is uninsulated, protect outer surface with suitable paint. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."
 - 3. Where ducts have external insulation, provide weatherproof aluminum jacket. See Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."

3.7 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts at a minimum to the following seal classes in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
 - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
 - 6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
 - 7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.

9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.8 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.9 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT-DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to support the duct and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with **SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."** Or ASCE/SEI 7.
 1. Space lateral supports a maximum of **40** feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of **80** feet o.c.
 2. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
- B. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads.

- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install cable restraints on ducts that are suspended with vibration isolators.
- E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by **an evaluation service member of the ICC Evaluation Service or an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction**.
- F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing and restraints to structure, to flanges of beams, to upper truss chords of bar joists, or to concrete members.
- G. Drilling for and Setting Anchors:
 - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcement or embedded items during drilling. Notify Architect if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
 - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
 - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
 - 4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
 - 5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior applications and stainless-steel anchors for applications exposed to weather.

3.10 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.11 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
 - 2. Test the following systems:

- a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - b. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of **2-and 3-and 4**-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, **selected by Architect from sections installed**, totaling no less than **50** percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - c. Return Ducts with a Pressure Class of **2-and 3-and 4**-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, **selected by Architect from sections installed**, totaling no less than **50** percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - d. Exhaust Ducts with a Pressure Class of **2-and 3-and 4**-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, **selected by Architect from sections installed**, totaling no less than **50** percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - e. Outdoor-Air Ducts with a Pressure Class of **2-and 3-and 4**-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, **selected by Architect from sections installed**, totaling no less than **50** percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
 4. Testing of each duct section is to be performed with access doors, coils, filters, dampers, and other duct-mounted devices in place as designed. No devices are to be removed or blanked off so as to reduce or prevent additional leakage.
 5. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
 6. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
 7. Give **seven** days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
 2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness in accordance with "Description of Method 3 - NADCA Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
 - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.13 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use duct cleaning methodology as indicated in NADCA ACR.

- C. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
 - 1. Provide openings with access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure and leakage class at dampers, coils, and any other locations where required for inspection and cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
 - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
 - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- D. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
 - 1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
 - 2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- E. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
 - 1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
 - 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
 - 3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
 - 4. Coils and related components.
 - 5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
 - 6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
 - 7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.
- F. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
 - 1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
 - 2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
 - 3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
 - 4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
 - 5. Clean coils and coil drain pans in accordance with NADCA ACR. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
 - 6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.

7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.14 STARTUP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.15 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:
 1. Fabricate all ducts to achieve SMACNA pressure class, seal class, and leakage class as indicated below.
- B. Supply Ducts:
 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive **1**-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: **C**.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: **8 or 16**.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: **8 or 16**.
- C. Return Ducts:
 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative **1**-or **2**-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: **C**.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: **8 or 16**.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: **8 or 16**.
- D. Liner:
 1. Supply-Air Ducts: **Fibrous glass, Type I** or **Flexible elastomeric** or **Natural fiber, 1-1/2 inch(es) thick**.
 2. Supply Fan Plenums: **Fibrous glass, Type II** or **Flexible elastomeric** or **Natural fiber, 1-1/2 inch(es) thick**.
- E. Elbow Configuration:
 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.

- b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
 - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
 - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
 - b. Round Elbows, **12** Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
 - c. Round Elbows, **14** Inches and Larger in Diameter: **Standing seam or Welded.**

F. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."

- a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Conical spin in.
2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 33 00

AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Barometric relief dampers.
3. Manual volume dampers.
4. Control dampers.
5. Fire dampers.
6. Ceiling radiation dampers.
7. Smoke dampers.
8. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
9. Corridor dampers.
10. Flange connectors.
11. Duct silencers.
12. Turning vanes.
13. Remote damper operators.
14. Duct-mounted access doors.
15. Duct access panel assemblies.
16. Flexible connectors.
17. Duct security bars.
18. Duct accessory hardware.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop, dynamic insertion loss, and self-generated noise data. Include breakout noise calculations for high-transmission-loss casings.

- B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories' fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:

- a. Special fittings.
- b. Manual volume damper installations.
- c. Control-damper installations.
- d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor-damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
- e. Duct security bars.
- f. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, or BIM model, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to **10** percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
 - 1. Performance:

- a. Leakage Rating Class III: Leakage not exceeding 40 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
2. Construction:
 - a. Linkage out of airstream.
 - b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
3. Frames:
 - a. Hat-shaped, **16-gauge-thick, galvanized sheet steel** or **18-gauge-thick stainless steel**.
 - b. Mitered and welded corners.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
4. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. **Galvanized** or **Stainless** steel; 16 gauge thick.
5. Blade Axles: **Galvanized steel** or **Stainless steel** or **Nonferrous metal**.
6. Bearings:
 - a. **Oil-impregnated bronze** or **Molded synthetic** or **Oil-impregnated stainless steel sleeve** or **Stainless steel sleeve**.
 - b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearing at each end of every blade.
7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
8. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.

B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Performance:
 - a. Leakage Rating Class III: Leakage not exceeding 40 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
2. Construction:
 - a. Linkage out of airstream.
 - b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
3. Frames:
 - a. Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch-thick, aluminum sheet channels.
 - b. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
4. Blades:

- a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch-thick aluminum sheet.
 - e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch-thick extruded aluminum.
5. Blade Axles: **Galvanized steel or Stainless steel or Nonferrous metal.**
6. Bearings:
- a. **Oil-impregnated bronze or Molded synthetic or Stainless steel sleeve.**
 - b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearing at each end of every blade.
7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
8. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.
- C. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. Performance:
 - a. **AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA 511.**
 - b. Leakage:
 - 1) Class IA: Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
 - 2) Class I: Leakage shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
 - 3) Class II: Leakage shall not exceed 10 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
 2. Construction:
 - a. Linkage: Out of airstream.
 - b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
 3. Frames:
 - a. Hat, U, or angle shaped.
 - b. Thickness: **16-gauge galvanized sheet steel or 18-gauge stainless steel.**
 - c. Mitered and welded corners.
 - d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 4. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. **Galvanized or Stainless**, roll-formed steel; 16 gauge thick.
 5. Blade Edging Seals:
 - a. **Closed-cell neoprene or PVC.**

- b. Inflatable seal blade edging or replaceable rubber seals.
 - 6. Blade Jamb Seals: **Flexible metal compression type or Felt or Vinyl or Neoprene.**
 - 7. Blade Axles: **Galvanized steel or Stainless steel or Nonferrous metal.**
 - 8. Bearings:
 - a. **Oil-impregnated bronze or Molded synthetic or Oil-impregnated stainless steel sleeve or Stainless steel sleeve.**
 - b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearing at each end of every blade.
 - 9. Tie Bars and Brackets: **Galvanized steel or Aluminum.**
 - 10. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.
- D. Low-Leakage, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
- 1. Performance:
 - a. **AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA 511.**
 - b. Leakage:
 - 1) Class IA: Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
 - 2) Class I: Leakage shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
 - 3) Class II: Leakage shall not exceed 10 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
 - 2. Construction:
 - a. Linkage out of airstream.
 - b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
 - 3. Frames:
 - a. Hat, U, or angle shaped.
 - b. Thickness: 0.08-inch aluminum sheet channels.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 - 4. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.072-inch thick aluminum sheet.
 - d. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch-thick extruded aluminum.
 - 5. Blade Edging Seals:
 - a. **Closed-cell neoprene or PVC.**
 - b. Inflatable seal blade edging or replaceable rubber seals.
 - 6. Blade Jamb Seals: **Flexible metal compression type or Felt or Vinyl or Neoprene.**

7. Blade Axles: **Galvanized steel or Stainless steel or Nonferrous metal.**
8. Bearings:
 - a. **Oil-impregnated bronze or Molded synthetic or Oil-impregnated stainless steel sleeve or Stainless steel sleeve.**
 - b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
9. Tie Bars and Brackets: **Galvanized steel or Aluminum.**
10. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.

E. Jackshaft:

1. Size: **0.5-inch or 1-inch** diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

F. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle, made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.3 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. General Requirements:

1. Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel-blade configuration for two-position control, equipment isolation service, and when mixing two airstreams. For other applications, use opposed-blade configuration.
2. Factory or field assemble multiple damper sections to provide a single damper assembly of size required by the application.

B. Performance:

1. **AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA 511.**
2. Leakage:

- a. Class IA: Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
- b. Class I: Leakage shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
- c. Class II: Leakage shall not exceed 10 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
- d. Class III: Leakage shall not exceed 40 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.

3. Pressure Drop: 0.05 inch wg at 1500 fpm across a 24-by-24-inch damper when tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D, Figure 5.3.
4. Velocity: Up to **3000 fpm**.
5. Temperature: Minus 25 to plus 180 deg F.
6. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length.

C. Construction:

1. Linkage out of airstream.
2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
3. Frames:
 - a. Hat, U, or angle shaped.
 - b. **0.08-inch-thick extruded aluminum or 16-gauge-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 18-gauge-thick stainless steel.**
 - c. **Mitered and welded or Interlocking, gusseted corners.**
 - d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
4. Blades:
 - a. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of **6 inches or 8 inches**.
 - b. **Opposed-blade design.**
 - c. **Galvanized steel or Stainless steel or Aluminum.**
 - d. **16-gauge-thick single skin or 14-gauge-thick air foil dual skin.**
5. Blade Edging Seals:
 - a. Replaceable **Closed-cell neoprene or PVC**.
 - b. Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.
6. Blade Jamb Seal: Flexible stainless steel, compression type.
7. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch diameter; **galvanized or stainless steel**.
8. Blade-Linkage Hardware: Zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings. Linkage mounted out of air stream.
9. Bearings:
 - a. **Oil-impregnated bronze or Molded synthetic or Oil-impregnated stainless steel sleeve or Stainless steel sleeve.**
 - b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

D. Damper Actuator - Electric:

1. Electric - **120 V ac or 24 V ac**.
2. UL 873, plenum rated.
3. **Two position or Fully modulating or with fail-safe spring return.**
 - a. Sufficient motor torque **and spring torque** to drive damper fully open and fully closed with adequate force to achieve required damper seal.
 - b. Minimum 90-degree drive rotation.

4. Clockwise or counterclockwise drive rotation as required for application.
5. Environmental Operating Range:
 - a. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 130 deg F.
 - b. Humidity: 5 to 95 percent relative humidity noncondensing.
6. Environmental enclosure: NEMA 2.
7. Actuator to be factory mounted and provided with a single-point wiring connection.

E. Damper Actuator - Pneumatic:

1. Operated by 0 to 20 psig pneumatic signal.
2. **Two position with or Fully modulating with positioner and fail-safe spring return.**
 - a. Sufficient power and spring force to drive damper fully open and fully closed with adequate force to achieve required damper seal.
 - b. Maximum 15-second full-stroke closure.
3. Actuator to be factory mounted.

F. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring:

1. Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
2. Electrical Connection: **115 V, single phase, 60 Hz** or **24 V, 60 Hz**.

2.4 CORRIDOR DAMPERS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. General Requirements:
1. Label to indicate conformance to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.
 2. Label to indicate conformance to NFPA 90A by an NRTL.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to **[4-inch wg] <Insert value>** static pressure class and minimum **[2000 fpm] <Insert value>** velocity.
- D. Fire Rating: **[1] [1-1/2] [2]** hours.
- E. Performance:
1. **[AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA Publication 511.]**
 2. Leakage:
 - a. Class 1A: Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
 - b. Class 1: Leakage shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
 - c. Class II: Leakage shall not exceed 10 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.

F. Construction:

1. Frame: Hat shaped, galvanized sheet steel, with [welded] [interlocking, gusseted] [or] [mechanically attached] corners[and mounting flange]; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
2. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, [interlocking] [overlapping], galvanized sheet steel; gauge in accordance with UL listing.

G. Mounting Sleeve:

1. Factory installed, galvanized sheet steel.
2. Length to suit wall or floor application[with factory-furnished silicone caulking].
3. Gauge in accordance with UL listing.

H. Heat-Responsive Device:

1. [Resettable] [Replaceable], [165 deg F] [212 deg F] rated, [fusible links] [fire-closure device].
2. [Electric] [Pneumatic] resettable [link] [device] and switch package, factory installed, rated.

I. Damper Actuator - Electric:

1. Electric - [120 V ac] [24 V ac].
2. UL 873, plenum rated.
3. Designed to operate in smoke-control systems complying with UL 555S requirements.
4. Two position with fail-safe spring return.
 - a. Sufficient motor torque and spring torque to drive damper fully open and fully closed with adequate force to achieve required damper seal.
 - b. Maximum 15-second full-stroke closure.
 - c. Minimum 90-degree drive rotation.
5. Clockwise or counterclockwise drive rotation as required for application.
6. Environmental Operating Range:
 - a. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 130 deg F.
 - b. Humidity: 5 to 95 percent relative humidity noncondensing.
7. Environmental enclosure: NEMA 2.
8. Actuator to be factory mounted and provided with single-point wiring connection.

2.5 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Description: **Add-on or roll-formed**, factory fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- B. Material: Galvanized steel.

- C. Gauge and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.6 DUCT SILENCERS

- A. General Requirements:

1. Factory fabricated.
2. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, packing materials, and accessory materials shall have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
3. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
4. Bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for prefabricated silencer sound and air performance.

- B. Shape:

1. Rectangular straight with splitters or baffles.
2. Round straight with center bodies or pods.
3. Rectangular elbow with splitters or baffles.
4. Round elbow with center bodies or pods.
5. Rectangular transitional with splitters or baffles.

- C. Rectangular Silencer Outer Casing: ASTM A653/A653M, **G90** or **G60**, galvanized sheet steel, **0.034 inch****0.040 inch** (**1.02 mm**) thick.

- D. Round Silencer Outer Casing: ASTM A653/A653M, **G90** or **G60**, galvanized sheet steel.

1. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units up to 24 Inches in Diameter: **22 gauge** thick.
2. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 26 through 40 Inches in Diameter: **20 gauge** thick.
3. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 42 through 52 Inches in Diameter: **18 gauge** thick.
4. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 54 through 60 Inches in Diameter: **16 gauge** thick.

- E. Inner Casing and Baffles: ASTM A653/A653M, **G90** or **G60** galvanized sheet metal, **22 gauge** thick, and with **1/8-inch**-diameter perforations.

- F. Special Construction:

1. Suitable for outdoor use.
2. High transmission loss **to achieve STC 45**.

- G. Connection Sizes: Match connecting ductwork unless otherwise indicated.

- H. Principal Sound-Absorbing Mechanism:

1. Controlled impedance membranes and broadly tuned resonators without absorptive media.
2. **Dissipative** or **Film-lined** type with fill material.

- a. Fill Material: **Inert and vermin-proof fibrous material, packed under not less than 5 percent compression** or **Inert and vermin-proof fibrous material**,

packed under not less than 15 percent compression or Moisture-proof nonfibrous material.

- b. Erosion Barrier: Polymer bag enclosing fill, heat-sealed before assembly.

3. Lining: **Mylar or Tedlar or Fiberglas cloth.**

I. Fabricate silencers to form rigid units that will not pulsate, vibrate, rattle, or otherwise react to system pressure variations. Do not use mechanical fasteners for unit assemblies.

- 1. Joints: **Lock formed and sealed or Continuously welded or flanged connections.**
- 2. Suspended Units: Factory-installed suspension hooks or lugs attached to frame in quantities and spaced to prevent deflection or distortion.
- 3. Reinforcement: Cross or trapeze angles for rigid suspension.

J. Accessories:

- 1. Integral **1-1/2** or **3-hour fire damper with access door. Access door to be high transmission loss to match silencer.**
- 2. Factory-installed end caps to prevent contamination during shipping.
- 3. Removable splitters.
- 4. Airflow-measuring devices.

K. Source Quality Control:

- 1. Test in accordance with ASTM E477.
- 2. Testing to be witnessed by **Architect or Owner at their discretion.**
- 3. Record acoustic ratings, including dynamic insertion loss and generated-noise power levels with an airflow of at least **2000 fpm** face velocity.
- 4. Leak Test: Test units for airtightness at 200 percent of associated fan static pressure or **6-inch wg** static pressure, whichever is greater.

L. Capacities and Characteristics:

- 1. Configuration: **Straight or 90-degree elbow.**
- 2. Shape: **Rectangular or Round.**
- 3. Attenuation Mechanism: **Acoustical glass fiber or Acoustical glass fiber with protective film liner or Helmholtz resonator mechanism with no internal media.**
- 4. Maximum Pressure Drop: **0.35 inch wg**
- 5. Casing:
 - a. Attenuation: **Standard.**
 - b. Outer Material: **Galvanized steel or Stainless steel or Aluminum.**
 - c. Inner Material: **Galvanized steel or Stainless steel or Aluminum.**
- 6. Accessories:
 - a. Access door.
 - b. Birdscreen.

2.7 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
 - 1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction:
 - 1. **Single or Double** wall.
 - 2. Single wall for ducts up to **48 inches** wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.8 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figure 7-2 (7-2M), "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and Figure 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
 - 1. Door:
 - a. Double wall, rectangular.
 - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. **24-gauge-thick galvanized steel or 0.032-inch thick aluminum or 24-gauge-thick stainless steel** door panel.
 - d. Vision panel.
 - e. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - f. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
 - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
 - a. 24-gauge-thick galvanized steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum frame.
 - 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
 - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
 - b. Access Doors up to **18 Inches** Square: **Two hinges or Continuous** and two sash locks.
 - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: **Three hinges or Continuous** and two compression latches

- d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: **Four hinges or Continuous** and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
- B. Pressure Relief Access Door:
- 1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - a. **24-gauge-thick galvanized steel or 0.032?inch-thick aluminum or 24-gauge-thick stainless steel** door panel.
 - 2. Door: **Single wall or Double wall with insulation fill** with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.
 - 3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
 - 4. Factory set at **3.0 to 8.0 inches wg**.
 - 5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
 - 6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
 - 7. Latches: Cam.
 - 8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
 - 9. Insulation Fill: **1-inch-thick**, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

2.9 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Access panels used in cooking applications:
 - 1. Labeled compliant to NFPA 96 for grease duct access doors.
 - 2. Labeled in accordance with UL 1978 by an NRTL.
- B. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness **16-gauge carbon** or **16-gauge stainless** steel.
- C. Fasteners: **Carbon** or **Stainless** steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
- D. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96, grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.
- E. Minimum Pressure Rating: **10 inches wg** positive or negative.

2.10 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, fabric materials, and accessory materials shall have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- D. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

- E. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip **3-1/2 inches** or **5-3/4 inches** wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, **0.028-inch**-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- F. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: **26 oz./sq. yd..**
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and **360 lbf/inch** in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- G. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: **24 oz./sq. yd..**
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and **440 lbf/inch** in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.
- H. High-Temperature System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric coated with silicone rubber.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: **16 oz./sq. yd..**
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 285 lbf/inch in the warp and **185 lbf/inch** in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.
- I. High-Corrosive-Environment System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric with chemical-resistant coating.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: **14 oz./sq. yd..**
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 450 lbf/inch in the warp and **340 lbf/inch** in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.
- J. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.
 - 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 - 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 - 6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
 - 7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of **1/4-inch** movement at start and stop.

2.11 DUCT SECURITY BARS

- A. Description: **Factory-fabricated and field-installed**

B. Configuration:

1. **Flat frame of 2 by 1/4 inch or Angle frame of 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 by 1/4 inch.**
2. Sleeve: **0.1345-inch or 3/16-inch, continuously welded or bent** steel frames with **1-by-1-by-3/16-inch or 1-1/2-by-1-1/2-by-1/8-inch angle frame factory welded to one end.** To be poured in place or set with concrete block or welded or bolted to wall, one side only. Duct connections on both sides.
3. Horizontal Bars: **1/2 inch or 2 by 1/4 inch.**
4. Vertical Bars: **1/2 inch or 3/4 inch or 1 inch or 2 by 1/4 inch.**
5. Bar Spacing: **6 inches.**
6. Mounting: **Metal deck or roofing or Bolted or welded or Bolted or welded with masonry anchors or Ductwork or other framing or Poured in place or set with concrete block or Welded or bolted to one wall (one side only).**

2.12 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

2.13 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: **G60 or G90.**
 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A480/A480M, Type 304, and having a **No. 2** finish for concealed ducts and finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, one-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless steel ducts.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, **1/4-inch** minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; **3/8-inch** minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories in accordance with applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116 for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless steel accessories in stainless steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install **backdraft** or **control** dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Where multiple damper sections are necessary to achieve required dimensions, provide reinforcement to fully support damper assembly when fully closed at full system design static pressure.
- E. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- F. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- G. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated and as needed for testing and balancing.
- H. Install fire **and smoke** dampers in accordance with UL listing.
- I. Duct security bars:
 1. Construct duct security bars from **0.164-inch** steel sleeve, continuously welded at all joints, and **1/2-inch**-diameter steel bars, **6 inches** o.c. in each direction in center of sleeve. Weld each bar to steel sleeve and each crossing bar. Weld **2-1/2-by-2-1/2-by-1-4-inch** steel angle to four sides and both ends of sleeve.
 2. Connect duct security bars to ducts with flexible connections. Provide 12-by-12-inch hinged access panel with cam lock in duct in each side of sleeve.
 3. Secure duct security bar assembly to building structure **as indicated in manufacturer's installation instructions**.
- J. Connect ducts to duct silencers **with flexible duct connectors**.
- K. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 2. Upstream **and downstream** from duct filters.

3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
 4. At drain pans and seals.
 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
 7. At each change in direction and at maximum **50-ft.** spacing.
 8. Upstream **and downstream** from turning vanes.
 9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
 10. For grease ducts, install at locations and spacing as required by NFPA 96.
 11. Control devices requiring inspection.
 12. Elsewhere as indicated.
- L. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- M. Access Door Sizes:
1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- N. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- O. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- P. For fans developing static pressures of 5 inches wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- Q. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- R. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
 2. Inspect locations of access doors, and verify that size and location of access doors are adequate to perform required operation.
 3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and that proper heat-response device is installed.

4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation, and verify that vanes do not move or rattle.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 235216 - CONDENSING BOILERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes gas-fired, **fire-tube or floor-mounted** condensing boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for boilers.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and **mounting and attachment** details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and sections, drawn to scale and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for boiler, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.
- F. Product Certificates:
 - 1. ASME Stamp Certification and Report: Submit "A," "S," or "PP" stamp certificate of authorization, as required by authorities having jurisdiction, and document hydrostatic testing of piping external to boiler.
 - 2. CSA B51 pressure vessel Canadian Registration Number (CRN).

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For boilers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Where "prorated" is indicated, the boiler manufacturer will cover the indicated percentage of cost of replacement parts. With "prorated" type, covered cost decreases as age of equipment increases.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Floor-Mounted Fire-Tube Condensing Boilers:
 - a. Heat Exchanger and Tank: Free from defects in material and workmanship.
 - b. Warranty Coverage: **Prorated Year 0 to 5 - 100 percent; Year 6 to 7 - 50 percent; Year 8 to 9 - 30 percent; Year 10 - 10 percent** for 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label boilers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Boilers shall have minimum efficiency in accordance with Table 6.8.1-6 and other requirements in Ch. 6 of ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- D. Mounting Base: **For securing boiler to concrete base.**

2.2 FLOOR-MOUNTED, FORCED-DRAFT, FIRE-TUBE CONDENSING BOILERS

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, and -tested, fire-tube, forced-draft, condensing boiler with heat exchanger sealed pressure tight, built on a steel base, including insulated jacket; flue-gas vent; combustion-air intake connections; water supply, return, and condensate drain connections; and controls. Units are to be for water-heating service only.
- B. Combustion Chamber and Flue Pipes: Corrosion-resistant **stainless steel or aluminum**.
- C. Pressure Vessel: Carbon steel with welded heads and tube connections.
- D. Burner: **Natural gas** forced draft.
- E. Blower: Centrifugal fan to operate during each burner-firing sequence and to prepurge and postpurge the combustion chamber.
 - 1. Motors: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - a. Motor Sizes: Large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- F. Gas Train: Combination gas valve with manual shutoff and pressure regulator.
- G. Ignition: Direct-spark ignition or silicone carbide hot-surface ignition with 100 percent main-valve shutoff and electronic flame supervision.
- H. Casing:
 - 1. Jacket: **Sheet metal or Plastic**, with snap-in or interlocking closures.
 - 2. Control Compartment Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1A.
 - 3. Finish: **Baked-enamel or Powder-coated or Stainless steel** protective finish.
 - 4. Insulation: Minimum 2-inch-thick, **mineral-fiber or polyurethane-foam** insulation surrounding the heat exchanger.
 - 5. Combustion-Air Connections: Inlet and vent duct collars.
- I. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Heating Medium: Hot water.
 - 2. Design Water-Pressure Rating: **800 psig**
 - 3. Safety Relief Valve Setting: **75 psig**
 - 4. Leaving-Water Temperature: **200 deg F**
 - 5. Minimum Efficiency AFUE: 95% percent.
 - 6. Gas Input: **299 MBH**.
 - 7. DOE Output Capacity: **278 MBH**
 - 8. Electrical Characteristics:
 - a. Volts: **115 V**.
 - b. Phase: **Single**
 - c. Hertz: **60 Hz**.

2.3 TRIM - FOR HOT-WATER BOILERS

- A. Include devices sized to comply with **ASME B31.1 ASME B31.9**.
- B. Aquastat Controllers: Operating and high limit with **automatic** reset.
- C. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated.
- D. Pressure and Temperature Gauge: Minimum 3-1/2-inch-diameter, combination water-pressure and -temperature gauge. Gauges shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges, so normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.
- E. High and low gas-pressure switches.
- F. Alarm bell with silence switch.
- G. Boiler Air Vent: **Automatic**
- H. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS 3/4 hose-end gate valve.

2.4 CONTROLS

- A. Boiler operating controls shall include the following devices and features:
 - 1. Control transformer.
 - 2. Set-Point Adjust: All set points shall be adjustable.
 - 3. Electric, factory-fabricated and **factory-installed** panel to control burner-firing rate, to reset supply-water temperature inversely with outside-air temperature. At **0 deg F** outside-air temperature, set supply-water temperature at **140 deg F**.
 - a. Include automatic, alternating-firing sequence for multiple boilers to ensure maximum system efficiency throughout the load range and to provide equal runtime for boilers.
- B. Burner Operating Controls: To maintain safe operating conditions, burner safety controls limit burner operation.
 - 1. High Cutoff: **Automatic** reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum boiler design temperature.
 - 2. Low-Water Cutoff Switch: Electronic probe shall prevent burner operation on low water. Cutoff switch shall be **automatic\J-reset** type.
 - 3. Blocked Inlet Safety Switch: Manual-reset pressure switch **factory** mounted on boiler combustion-air inlet.
 - 4. Audible Alarm: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; shall sound alarm for above conditions.
- C. Building Automation System Interface: Factory install hardware and software to enable building automation system to monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms.
 - 1. Hardwired Points:

2. A **BACnet** communication interface with building automation system shall enable building automation system operator to remotely control and monitor the boiler from an operator workstation. All monitoring and control features, which are available at the local boiler control panel, shall also be available at the remote operator workstation through the building automation system.

2.5 ELECTRICAL POWER

- A. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are shown on Drawings and specified in electrical Sections.
- B. Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to boiler.
 1. House in NEMA 250, **Type 1** enclosure.
 2. Wiring shall be numbered and color coded to match wiring diagram.
 3. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a **metal** raceway.
 4. Field power interface shall be to **circuit breaker**.
 5. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls **with a disconnect switch or circuit breaker**.
 6. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.

2.6 VENTING KITS

- A. Kit: Complete system, ASTM A959, Type 29-4C stainless steel pipe, vent terminal, thimble, indoor plate, vent adapter, condensate trap and dilution tank, and sealant.
- B. Combustion-Air Intake: Complete system, stainless steel pipe, vent terminal with screen, inlet air coupling, and sealant.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. UL Compliance: Test gas-fired boilers having input of more than 400,000 Btu/h for compliance with UL 795. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. UL Compliance, Oil-Fired: Test oil-fired boilers for compliance with UL 726. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. UL Compliance, Gas-Fired: Test gas-fired boilers for compliance with UL 2764. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. CSA Compliance: Test boilers for compliance with ANSI Z21.13-2017/CSA 4.9.
- E. Performance Testing: Test and label boilers for efficiency to comply with AHRI 1500.

- F. Burner and Hydrostatic Test: Factory adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency; perform hydrostatic test.
- G. Test and inspect factory-assembled boilers, before shipping, in accordance with 2017 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Factory test boilers for safety and functionality; fill boiler with water, and fire throughout firing range, to prove operation of all safety components.
- H. Allow Owner access to source quality-control testing of boilers. Notify Architect 14 days in advance of testing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for concrete equipment bases, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, and piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Final boiler locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.
- B. Examine mechanical spaces for suitable conditions where boilers will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 BOILER INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install floor-mounted boilers on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s).
- B. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.
- C. Assemble and install boiler trim.
- D. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.
- E. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for hydronic piping specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
- B. Connect piping to boilers, except safety relief valve connections, with flexible connectors of materials suitable for service.
- C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

- D. When installing piping adjacent to boiler, allow space for service and maintenance of condensing boilers. Arrange piping for easy removal of condensing boilers.
- E. Install condensate drain piping to condensate-neutralization unit and from neutralization unit to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Install piping with a minimum of 2 percent downward slope in direction of flow.
- F. Install condensate piping from equipment drain connection to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Install piping with a minimum of 2 percent downward slope in direction of flow.
- G. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas-train connection. Provide a reducer if required.
- H. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tappings with shutoff valve, and union or flange at each connection.
- I. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.

3.4 DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Boiler Venting:
 - 1. Install flue-venting kit and combustion-air intake.
 - 2. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions.
 - 3. Field fabricate and install boiler vent and combustion-air intake.
 - 4. Utilize vent and intake duct material, size, and configuration as indicated in boiler manufacturer's instructions and to comply with UL 1738.
 - 5. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions.
 - 6. Connect boiler vent full size to boiler connections.
 - 7. Comply with requirements in Section 235123 "Gas Vents."
 - 8. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- C. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least **1/2 inch** high.

3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- C. Install nameplate for each control connection, indicating field control panel designation and I/O control designation feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs.
 - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least **1/2 inch** high.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency, Contractor: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections:
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - a. Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set points of fuel supply, water level, and water temperature.
 - b. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- E. Boiler will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- G. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within **12 months of date of Substantial Completion** provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to **two** visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. **Train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain boilers.
 - 1. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified.

2. Train personnel in operation and maintenance and to obtain maximum efficiency in plant operation.
3. Provide instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.
4. Obtain Owner sign-off that training is complete.
5. Owner training shall be held at Project site.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 54 13
ELECTRIC-RESISTANCE FURNACES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Electric furnaces and accessories complete with controls.
2. Air filters.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

- C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each furnace to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals:

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

- a. Furnace and accessories complete with controls.
- b. Air filter.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Disposable Air Filters: Furnish [**two**] complete sets.
 - 2. Disposable Air-Cleaner Media: Furnish [**one**] complete set(s).
 - 3. Fan Belts: Furnish [**one**] set(s) for each furnace fan.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- B. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace the following components of furnaces that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period:
 - 1. Warranty Period, Commencing on Date of Substantial Completion:
 - a. Refrigeration Compressors: **10 years**
 - b. Evaporator and Condenser Coils: **Five years**

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Manufacturers

- A. Must be compatible with Air Handler

2.2 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory assembled, piped, wired, and tested.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 FURNACES

- A. Cabinet: Steel, with duct liner **downstream from cooling coil**.
 - 1. Duct Liner: Fiberglass, minimum **3/4 inch** thick, complying with ASTM C1071 and having a coated surface exposed to airstream complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with NAIMA's "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 - a. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 2. Factory paint external cabinets in manufacturer's standard color.
- B. Fan: Centrifugal, factory balanced, resilient mounted, direct drive.
 - 1. Fan Motors: Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 2. Special Motor Features: Single speed, premium efficiency, as defined in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment," and with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - 3. Special Motor Features: Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - 4. Special Motor Features: Electronically controlled motor (ECM) controlled by integrated furnace/blower control.
- C. Electric-Resistant Heating Elements: Helix-wound, nickel-chromium wire-heating elements in ceramic insulators mounted on steel supports.
- D. Heating-Element Control: Sequencer relay with relay for each element; switches elements on and off, with delay between each increment; initiates, stops, or changes fan speed.
- E. Summer Fan Switch: Connected to permit independent on-off switch of unit fan.

2.4 THERMOSTATS

- A. Controls shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, "Controls."
- B. Solid-State Thermostat: **Wall-mounted**, programmable, microprocessor-based unit with **automatic** switching from heating to cooling, preferential rate control, seven-day programmability with minimum of four temperature presets per day, **vacation mode**, and battery backup protection against power failure for program settings.
- C. Single-Stage, Heating-Cooling Thermostat: Adjustable, heating-cooling, wall-mounted unit with fan on-automatic selector.
- D. Control Wiring: Balanced twisted-pair cabling **complying with requirements for Category 5e in Section 260523 "Control Voltage Cables for Electrical Equipment."**
- E. Control Wiring: Balanced twisted pair cabling.
 - 1. Description: **Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP)** No. 24 AWG, 100 ohm, four pair.
 - 2. Cable Jacket Color: **Blue**

2.5 AIR FILTERS

- A. Washable Filters: 1-inch-thick urethane pad.
- B. Disposable Filters: **1-inch-thick fiberglass media with ASHRAE 52.2 MERV rating of 9 or higher.**
- C. Charged Media Air Filters: Sheet metal housing arranged to be ducted in return-air duct connection to furnace; generates electrostatic charge; MERV 10 rating.
- D. HEPA Air-Filter Units: Sheet metal housing with fan arranged to be ducted to return-air duct connection to furnace, with activated carbon prefilter, **carbon VOC**, and high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) disposable filter. HEPA shall be as follows:
 - 1. Standard: UL 586.
 - 2. Rating: ASHRAE 52.2, 99.97 percent efficiency to 0.30-micrometer particle size.

2.6 AIR CLEANERS

2.7 REFRIGERATION COMPONENTS

- A. General Refrigeration Component Requirements:
 - 1. Refrigeration compressor, coils, and specialties shall be designed to operate with CFC-free refrigerants.
 - 2. Energy Efficiency: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- B. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tubes mechanically expanded into aluminum fins. Comply with AHRI 210/240. Match size with furnace. Include condensate drain pan with accessible drain outlet **complying with ASHRAE 62.1**.
 - 1. Refrigerant Coil Enclosure: Steel, matching furnace and evaporator coil, with access panel and flanges for integral mounting at or on furnace cabinet and galvanized sheet metal drain pan coated with black asphaltic base paint.
- C. Refrigerant Line Kits: Annealed-copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized with nitrogen, sealed, and with suction line insulated. Provide in standard lengths for installation without joints, except at equipment connections.
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type I, **1 inch** thick.
- D. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping."
- E. Air-Cooled Compressor-Condenser Unit:
 - 1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
 - 2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed **reciprocating or scroll** type.

- a. Crankcase heater.
 - b. **Restrained vibration or Vibration** isolation mounts for compressor.
 - c. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - d. Two-speed compressor motors shall have manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 - e. Refrigerant Charge: [**R-410A**].
 - f. Refrigerant: R-410A.
3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins, complying with AHRI 210/240, and with liquid subcooler.
 4. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature air cutoff thermostat.
 5. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
 6. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
 7. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.
 8. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine factory-installed insulation before furnace installation. Reject units that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for refrigerant piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Suspended Units: Suspend from structure using threaded rods, spring hangers, and building attachments. Secure rods to unit hanger attachments. Adjust hangers so unit is level and plumb.
 1. Install seismic restraints to limit movement of furnace by resisting code-required seismic acceleration.
- B. Base-Mounted Units: Secure units to substrate. Provide optional bottom closure base if required by installation conditions.
 1. Anchor furnace to substrate to resist code-required seismic acceleration.
- C. Controls: Install thermostats and humidistats at mounting height of 60 inches above floor.

- D. Wiring Method: Install control wiring in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal control wiring except in unfinished spaces.
- E. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on 4-inch-thick, reinforced concrete base; 4 inches larger on each side than unit. Coordinate anchor installation with concrete base.
- F. Install ground-mounted compressor-condenser components on polyethylene mounting base.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- B. Water piping installation requirements are specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Connect water piping with union and ball valve.
- C. Connect ducts to furnace with flexible connector. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- D. Connect refrigerant tubing kits to refrigerant coil in furnace and to air-cooled compressor-condenser unit.
 1. Flared Joints: Use ASME B16.26 fitting and flared ends, following procedures in CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
 2. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B32.
 3. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping" for installation and joint construction of refrigerant piping.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. Perform electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection.
 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems with refrigerant and oil and test for leaks. Repair leaks, replace lost refrigerant and oil, and retest until no leaks exist.
 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation, product capability, and compliance with requirements.
 4. Verify that fan wheel is rotating in the correct direction and is not vibrating or binding.
 5. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- B. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:
 1. Inspect for physical damage to unit casings.
 2. Verify that access doors move freely and are weathertight.
 3. Clean units and inspect for construction debris.
 4. Verify that all bolts and screws are tight.
 5. Adjust vibration isolation and flexible connections.
 6. Verify that controls are connected and operational.
- B. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
- C. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions and complete manufacturer's operational checklist.
- D. Measure and record airflows.
- E. Verify proper operation of capacity control device.
- F. After startup and performance test, lubricate bearings **and adjust belt tension.**

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- B. Set controls, burner, and other adjustments for optimum heating performance and efficiency. Adjust heat-distribution features, including shutters, dampers, and relays, to provide optimum heating performance and system efficiency.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. After completing installation, clean furnaces internally according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install new filters in each furnace within 14 days after Substantial Completion.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain condensing units. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 63 13
AIR-COOLED REFRIGERANT CONDENSERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Packaged air-cooled refrigerant condensers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each air-cooled refrigerant condenser.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
2. Include equipment dimensions, weights and structural loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

- B. Shop Drawings: For air-cooled refrigerant condensers.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and **mounting** and **attachment** details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.

- B. Seismic Qualification Data: For air-cooled refrigerant condensers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.

3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-cooled refrigerant condensers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Coordinate location of refrigerant piping and electrical rough-ins.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain air-cooled refrigerant condensers from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Fabricate and label refrigeration system according to ASHRAE 15 and ASHRAE 34.
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- D. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation **and seismic restraints**, including comprehensive engineering analysis, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- E. Seismic Performance: Air-cooled refrigerant condensers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**. Retain first subparagraph below to define the term "withstand" as it applies to this Project. Definition varies with type of building and occupancy and is critical to valid certification. Option is used for essential facilities where equipment must operate immediately after an earthquake.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified **and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event.**"
2. Component Importance Factor: **1.0.**

2.3 PACKAGED AIR-COOLED REFRIGERANT CONDENSERS

- A. Description: Factory assembled and tested; consisting of casing, condenser coils, condenser fans and motors, and unit controls.
- B. Refrigerant: **R-410A**
- C. Condenser Coil: Factory tested at 425 psig.
 1. Tube: **1/2-inch-diameter seamless copper or 3/8-inch-diameter seamless copper. 5/8-inch-diameter seamless copper.**
 2. Coil Fin: **Aluminum or Copper.**
 3. Motors: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - a. Enclosure Type: **Totally enclosed, air-over (TEAO) or Open, drip-proof (ODP).**
 - b. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough, so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - c. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on **exterior** of unit.
 4. Comply with Section 230546 "Coatings for HVAC" for corrosion-resistant coating. See Drawings for condensers requiring a corrosion-resistant coating.
 5. Coating, Coils: **Corrosion resistant.**
 6. Coating, Fans: **Corrosion resistant.**
 7. Coating, Casing: **Corrosion resistant.**
 8. Circuit: To match compressors
- D. Condenser Fans and Drives:
 1. Directly driven propeller fans with **aluminum or galvanized-steel** fan blades, for **vertical or horizontal** air discharge; manufactured with permanently lubricated ball-bearing motors with integral current- and thermal-overload protection.
 2. Forward-curved centrifugal fans for **vertical or horizontal** air discharge.
 - a. Fan on steel shaft with self-aligning ball bearings.
 - b. V-belt drive with minimum of two belts; variable-pitch drive pulley.
 - c. Motor mounted on adjustable slide base.
 3. Fan Motors:
 - a. Weather-proof motors with rain shield and shaft slinger.

- b. **Totally enclosed air-over (TEAO) or Open-drip proof (ODP).**
 - c. **Constant or Variable** speed.
- E. Operating and Safety Controls: Include condenser fan motor thermal and overload cutouts; **115-V** control transformer, if required; magnetic contactors for condenser fan motors and a nonfused factory-mounted and -wired disconnect switch for single external electrical power connection.
 - 1. Fan Cycling Control: **Head pressure switches** or **Head pressure sensors** or **Ambient thermostats**.
- F. Casings: **Galvanized-steel or zinc-coated-steel treated and finished with manufacturer's standard paint coating** or **Aluminum**, designed for outdoor installation with weather protection for components and controls, and with the following:
 - 1. Removable panels for access to controls, condenser fans, motors, and drives.
 - 2. Coating: **Corrosion resistant**.
 - 3. **Vinyl-coated or Plated** steel fan guards.
 - 4. Lifting holes.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Steel:
 - 1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
 - 2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.
- B. Stainless Steel:
 - 1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
 - 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.
- C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
- D. Aluminum: ASTM B209.
- E. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Coat with a corrosion-resistant coating capable of withstanding a **500**-hour salt-spray test according to ASTM B117.
 - 1. Standards:
 - a. ASTM B117 for salt spray.
 - b. ASTM D2794 for minimum impact resistance of 100 in-lb.
 - c. ASTM B3359 for cross hatch adhesion of 5B.
 - 2. Application: **Immersion or Spray**.
 - 3. Thickness: **1 mil**
 - 4. Gloss: Minimum gloss of 60 on a 60 degree meter.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of air-cooled refrigerant condensers.
- B. Examine roughing-in for refrigerant piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where air-cooled condensers will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb, firmly anchored in locations indicated; maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
- B. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install air-cooled condenser refrigerant condensers on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases.
- C. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
- D. Loose Components: Install electrical components, devices, and accessories that are not factory mounted.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Refrigerant Piping: Where indicated on Drawings, connect piping to unit with pressure-relief, service valve, filter-dryer, and moisture indicator on each refrigerant-circuit liquid line.
- D. Apply labels to refrigerant lines in accordance with Section 230553, "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install field power to each condenser unit electrical power connection.

- B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- E. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least **1/2 inch** high.

3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- C. Install nameplate for each control connection, indicating field control panel designation and I/O control designation feeding connection.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. **Perform** startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:
 - a. Inspect for physical damage to unit casing.
 - b. Verify that access doors move freely and are weathertight.
 - c. Clean units and inspect for construction debris.
 - d. Verify that all bolts and screws are tight.
 - e. Adjust vibration isolation and flexible connections.
 - f. Verify that controls are connected and operational.
 - 2. Lubricate bearings on fan motors.
 - 3. Verify that fan wheel is rotating in the correct direction and is not vibrating or binding.
 - 4. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
 - 5. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions and complete manufacturer's startup checklist.
 - 6. Measure and record airflow and air-temperature rise over coils.
 - 7. Verify proper operation of capacity control device.

8. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.
9. After startup and performance test, lubricate bearings.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Perform electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection.
 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Complete manufacturer's starting checklist.
 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 5. Verify proper airflow over coils.
- F. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.
- G. Air-cooled refrigerant condensers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. **Train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-cooled refrigerant condensers.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 73 13.13
INDOOR, BASIC AIR-HANDLING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes factory-assembled, indoor air-handling units with limited features, including the following components and accessories:

1. Casings.
2. Fans, drives, and motors.
3. Coils.
4. Air filtration.
5. Dampers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
3. Include unit dimensions and weight.
4. Include cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
5. Fans:
 - a. Include certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - b. Include certified fan-sound power ratings.
 - c. Include fan construction and accessories.
 - d. Include motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
6. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
7. Include filters with performance characteristics.
8. Include dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.

- B. Shop Drawings: For each type and configuration of indoor, basic, air-handling unit.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and **mounting** and **attachment** details.

2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Detail fabrication and assembly of indoor, basic air-handling units, as well as procedures and diagrams.
4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates for indoor, basic air-handling units, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 4. Restraint of internal components.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Startup service reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-handling units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of indoor, basic, air-handling units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than **one** year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.
- C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- E. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation **and seismic restraints**, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- F. Structural Performance: Casing panels shall be self-supporting and capable of withstanding positive/negative **4-inch wg** of internal static pressure, without exceeding a midpoint deflection of **0.005 inches/inch** of panel span.
- G. Seismic Performance: Air-handling units shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified **and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event.**"

2.2 FAN, DRIVE, AND MOTOR SECTION

- A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.
- B. Fans: Centrifugal, rated according to AMCA 210; galvanized steel; mounted on solid-steel shaft.
 - 1. Shafts: With field-adjustable alignment.
 - a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway.
 - 2. Shaft Bearings:
 - a. Heavy-duty, self-aligning, pillow-block type with an **L-50** rated life of minimum **100,000** hours according to ABMA 9.

- 3. Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.
 - a. Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
 - 4. Housings, Plenum Fans: Steel frame and panel; fabricated without fan scroll and volute housing. Provide inlet screens for Type SWSI fans.
 - 5. Forward-Curved, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Inlet flange, backplate, and shallow blades with inlet and tip curved forward in direction of airflow and mechanically fastened to flange and backplate; **steel or aluminum** hub swaged to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.
 - 6. Airfoil, Centrifugal Fan Wheels (Plenum Fan Wheels): Smooth-curved inlet flange, backplate, and hollow die-formed airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate; steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.
 - 7. Mounting: For internal vibration isolation **and seismic control**. Factory-mount fans with manufacturer's standard **restrained** vibration isolation mounting devices having a minimum static deflection of **1 inch**.
 - 8. Shaft Lubrication Lines: Extended to a location outside the casing.
 - 9. Flexible Connector: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip minimum 3-1/2 inches wide, attached to two strips of minimum 2-3/4-inch-wide by 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet.
 - a. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric, double coated with neoprene. Fabrics, coatings, and adhesives shall comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Drive, Direct: Factory-mounted, direct drive.
- D. Drive, Belt: Factory-mounted, V-belt drive, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning, and with **1.5** service factor based on fan motor.
- 1. Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing, dynamically balanced at the factory.
 - 2. Belts: Oil resistant, non-sparking and nonstatic; in matched sets for multiple-belt drives.
 - 3. Belt Guards: Comply with requirements specified by OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; **0.146-inch-thick, 3/4-inch** diamond-mesh wire screen, welded to steel angle frame; prime coated.
- E. Motors:
- 1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 2. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - 3. Enclosure Type: **Open, dripproof or Totally enclosed, fan cooled.**
 - 4. Enclosure Materials: **Cast iron.**
 - 5. Efficiency: Premium efficient as defined in NEMA MG 1.

6. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with 5-hp motors and smaller; fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp. Select pulley size so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
7. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.

F. Motors:

G. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Comply with Section 262923 "Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers."

2.3 COIL SECTION

A. General Requirements for Coil Section:

1. Comply with AHRI 410.
2. Fabricate coil section to allow removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).
3. Coils shall not act as structural component of unit.

B. Heating Coils:

1. Electrical Coils: Comply with UL 1995.

- a. Casing Assembly: **Slip-in** or **Flanged** type with galvanized-steel frame.
- b. Open Heating Elements: Resistance wire of 80 percent nickel and 20 percent chromium supported and insulated by floating ceramic bushings recessed into casing openings, fastened to supporting brackets, and mounted in galvanized-steel frame.
- c. Overtemperature Protection: Disk-type, automatically resetting, thermal-cutout, safety device; serviceable through terminal box without removing heater from coil section.
- d. Secondary Protection: Load-carrying, manually resetting or manually replaceable, thermal cutouts; factory wired in series with each heater stage.

C. Cooling Coils:

1. Refrigerant Coil:

- a. Tubes: **Copper**
- b. Fins:

1) Material: **[Aluminum]**

- c. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
- d. Headers: **Seamless-copper headers with brazed connections**
- e. Frames: **Galvanized steel**
- f. Coatings: **Corrosion-resistant coating**.
- g. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.

- 1) Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig

2.4 AIR FILTRATION SECTION

- A. Particulate air filtration is specified in Section 234100 "Particulate Air Filtration."
- B. Panel Filters:
 1. Description: **Pleated** factory-fabricated, self-supported disposable air filters with holding frames.
 2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
 3. Media: Interlaced glass, synthetic, or cotton fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive and antimicrobial coating.
 4. Filter-Media Frame: **High wet-strength beverage board** with perforated metal retainer, or metal grid, on outlet side.
- C. Adhesive, Sustainability Projects: As recommended by air-filter manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
- D. Adhesive, LEED for Schools Projects: As recommended by air-filter manufacturer and that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- E. Side-Access Filter Mounting Frames:
 1. Particulate Air Filter Frames: Match inner casing and outer casing material, and insulation thickness.
 - a. Sealing: Incorporate positive-sealing device to ensure seal between gasketed material on channels to seal top and bottom of filter cartridge frames to prevent bypass of unfiltered air.

2.5 DAMPERS

2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Steel:
 1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
 2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.
- B. Stainless Steel:
 1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.
- C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.

- D. Aluminum: ASTM B209.
- E. Comply with Section 230546 "Coatings for HVAC" for corrosion-resistant coating.
- F. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Coat with a corrosion-resistant coating capable of withstanding a **3000**-hour salt-spray test according to ASTM B117.
 - 1. Standards:
 - a. ASTM B117 for salt spray.
 - b. ASTM D2794 for minimum impact resistance of 100 in-lb
 - c. ASTM B3359 for cross hatch adhesion of 5B.
 - 2. Application: **Immersion or Spray**.
 - 3. Thickness: **1 mil**.
 - 4. Gloss: Minimum gloss of 60 on a 60-degree meter.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI 430 Certification: Air-handling units and their components shall be factory tested according to AHRI 430 and shall be listed and labeled by AHRI.
- B. AMCA 300 and AMCA 301, or AHRI 260 Certification: Air-handling unit fan sound ratings shall comply with AMCA 300, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data" and AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data," or with AHRI 260, "Sound Rating of Ducted Air Moving and Conditioning Equipment."
- C. Water Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.
- D. Steam Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig, and to 200 psig underwater, according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.
- E. Refrigerant Coils: Factory tested to minimum 450-psig internal pressure, and to minimum 300-psig internal pressure while underwater, according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-handling unit installation. Replace with new insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for steam, hydronic, and condensate drainage piping systems and electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting:

- 1. Install air-handling units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Suspended Units: Suspend **and brace** units from structural-steel support frame using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Coordinate sizes and locations of structural-steel support members with actual equipment provided.
- C. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.
- D. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.
- E. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to air-handling unit, allow for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.
- D. Connect condensate drain pans using **NPS 1-1/4**, ASTM B88, Type M copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or floor drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- E. Hot- and Chilled-Water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each coil supply connection. Install balancing valve and union or flange at each coil return connection.
- F. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each supply and return connection.

3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

- B. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- C. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs.
 - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. **Perform** startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.
 - 4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, free fan wheel rotation, and smooth bearing operations. Reconnect fan drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.
 - 5. Verify that bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts are lubricated with factory-recommended lubricants.
 - 6. Verify that outdoor- and return-air mixing dampers open and close, and maintain minimum outdoor-air setting.
 - 7. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.
 - 8. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed for electric coils.
 - 9. Install new, clean filters.
 - 10. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct systems are in fully open position.
- B. Starting procedures for air-handling units include the following:
 - 1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated rpm. **Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design conditions.**
 - 2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.
 - 3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within **12** months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to **two** visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing of air-handling unit and air-distribution systems, and after completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform the following tests and inspections **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative if needed:**
 1. Leak Test: After installation, fill water and steam coils with water, and test coils and connections for leaks.
 2. Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks.
 3. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
- E. Air-handling unit and components will be considered defective if unit or components do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. **Train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-handling units.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 81 26

SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filters: **One** set for each air-handling unit.
 - 2. Gaskets: **One** set for each access door.
 - 3. Fan Belts: **One** set for each air-handling unit fan.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
 - 2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period:
 - a. For Compressor: **One** year from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For Parts: **One** year from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. For Labor: **One** year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

2.2 INDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

A. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
4. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch; leak tested to 300 psig underwater; with a two-position control valve.
5. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
6. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
7. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - c. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
8. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
9. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.
10. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Fabricated with **[one] [two]** percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face **to comply with ASHRAE 62.1**
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of **2 inches** deep.
 - b. Single-wall, **galvanized** or **stainless-steel** sheet.
 - c. Double-wall, **galvanized** or **stainless-steel** sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
 - d. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on **one end** or **both ends** of pan.

1) Minimum Connection Size: **NPS 1 or NPS 2**

- e. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
- f. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

B. Floor-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:

- 1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect.
 - a. Discharge Grille: **Steel with surface-mounted frame or Welded steel bars forming a linear grille and welded into supporting panel.**
 - b. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
 - c. Drain Pans: Galvanized steel, with connection for drain; insulated.
- 2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
- 3. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch; leak tested to 300 psig underwater; with a two-position control valve.
- 4. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
- 5. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal
- 6. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
- 7. Air Filtration Section:
 - a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:
 - 1) Comply with NFPA 90A.
 - 2) Minimum MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
 - 3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.
 - b. Disposable Panel Filters:
 - 1) Factory-fabricated, viscous-coated, flat-panel type.
 - 2) Thickness: Per manufacturer's requirements
 - 3) Recommended Final Resistance:
 - 4) MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2: [9]
 - 5) Media: Interlaced glass fibers sprayed with nonflammable adhesive

C. Wall-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect, and discharge drain pans with drain connection.
2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
4. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.
5. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - c. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
 - d. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
 - e. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
 - f. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on **exterior** of unit.
6. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
7. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Fabricated with **two** percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face **to comply with ASHRAE 62.1**
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of **1 inch** deep.
 - b. Single-wall, **galvanized** or **stainless**-steel sheet.
 - c. Double-wall, **galvanized** or **stainless**-steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
 - d. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on **one end** or **both ends** of pan.
 - 1) Minimum Connection Size: **NPS 1 or NPS 2**
 - e. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
8. Air Filtration Section:
 - a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:

- 1) Comply with NFPA 90A.
 - 2) Minimum MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
 - 3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.
- b. Disposable Panel Filters:
- 1) Factory-fabricated, viscous-coated, flat-panel type.
 - 2) Thickness: Per Manufacturer's requirements
 - 3) MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2: **9**
 - 4) Media: Interlaced glass fibers sprayed with nonflammable adhesive **and antimicrobial agent**.
 - 5) Frame: Galvanized steel, with metal grid on outlet side, steel rod grid on inlet side, and hinged; with pull and retaining handles.

2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
 - b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 - c. Refrigerant: **R-410A**
 - d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.
7. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan.
- B. Thermostat: Builder Model 1020NC
 1. Deliver thermostats to housing authority for programming prior to installation. Will be returned to contractor for installation.

- C. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.
- D. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.
- E. Drain Hose: For condensate.
- F. Monitoring:
 - 1. Monitor constant and variable motor loads.
 - 2. Monitor variable-frequency-drive operation.
 - 3. Monitor economizer cycle.
 - 4. Monitor cooling load.
 - 5. Monitor air distribution static pressure and ventilation air volumes.

2.5 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s).
 - 2. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on polyethylene mounting base.
- D. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
 - 1. Water Coil Connections: Comply with requirements specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping". Connect hydronic piping to supply and return coil connections with shutoff-duty valve and union or flange on the supply connection and with throttling-duty valve and union or flange on the return connection.
 - 2. Remote, Water-Cooled Condenser Connections: Comply with requirements specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping." Connect hydronic piping to supply and return

- connections with shutoff-duty valve and union or flange on the supply connection and with throttling-duty valve and union or flange on the return connection.
- B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.
 - C. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply **and return** ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. **Perform** startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. **Train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 238126

SECTION 23 81 46

WATER-SOURCE UNITARY HEAT PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes unitary heat pumps with refrigerant-to-water heat exchangers, refrigeration circuits, and refrigerant compressor(s).

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each water-source unitary heat pump.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

- B. Sustainable Design Submittals

- C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For water-source unitary heat pumps, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

- B. Product Certificates: For each type of water-source unitary heat pump, signed by product manufacturer.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For water-source unitary heat pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of water-source unitary heat pumps that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, refrigeration components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: **Four** years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. ASHRAE 15.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with safety requirements in UL 484 for assembly of free-delivery, water-source heat pumps.

2.2 WATER-SOURCE UNITARY HEAT PUMPS, 6 TONS AND SMALLER

- A. Description: Packaged water-source unitary heat pump with temperature controls; factory assembled, piped, wired, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE/ARI/ISO-13256-1.
 - 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Cabinet and Chassis: Galvanized-steel casing with the following features:
 - 1. Access panel for access and maintenance of internal components.
 - 2. Knockouts for electrical and piping connections.

3. Cabinet Insulation: Glass-fiber liner, minimum **3/4 inch** thick, complying with UL 181, ASTM C1071, and ASTM G21.

C. Water Circuits:

1. Refrigerant-to-Water Heat Exchangers:

- a. Source-side coaxial heat exchangers with **copper** or **cupronickel** water tube, with enhanced heat-transfer surfaces inside a steel shell; both shell and tube are leak tested to 450 psig on refrigerant side and 400 psig on water side.
- b. Load-side coaxial heat exchangers with **copper** or **cupronickel** water tube, with enhanced heat-transfer surfaces inside a steel shell; both shell and tube are leak tested to 450 psig on refrigerant side and 400 psig on water side.
- c. Stainless-steel, brazed-plate heat exchanger is leak tested to 450 psig on refrigerant side and 400 psig on water side. Factory mount heat exchanger in unit on resilient rubber vibration isolators.
- d. Hot-water generator, **copper water tube** or **vented double wall copper tube** with enhanced heat-transfer surfaces inside a steel shell; both shell and tube are leak tested to 450 psig on refrigerant side and 400 psig on water side, pump, circuit breaker, high water temperature and low water refrigerant cutoffs, and tank connection.

D. Refrigerant Circuit Components:

1. Sealed Refrigerant Circuit: Charge with R-410A refrigerant.
2. Filter-Dryer: Factory installed to clean and dehydrate the refrigerant circuit.
3. Charging Connections: Service fittings on suction and liquid for charging and testing on each circuit.
4. Reversing Valve: Four-way, solenoid-activated valve designed to be fail-safe in heating position with replaceable magnetic coil.
5. Compressor:
 - a. Scroll.
 - b. **Single stage**
 - c. Installed on vibration isolators and mounted on a structural steel base plate and full-length channel stiffeners.
 - d. Exterior of compressor shall be wrapped with a high-density sound-attenuating blanket and housed in an acoustically treated enclosure.
 - e. Factory-Installed Safeties:
 - 1) Antirecycle timer.
 - 2) High-pressure cutout.
 - 3) Low-pressure cutout or loss of charge switch.
 - 4) Internal thermal-overload protection.
 - 5) Freezestat to stop compressor if water-loop temperature in refrigerant-to-water heat exchanger falls below **35 deg F**.
 - 6) Water-coil, low-temperature switch.
6. Refrigerant Piping Materials: ASTM B743 copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.

7. Pipe Insulation: Refrigerant minimum 3/8-inch-thick, flexible elastomeric insulation on piping exposed to airflow through the unit. Maximum 25/50 flame-spread/smoke-developed indexes according to ASTM E84.
8. Refrigerant Metering Device: Thermal-expansion valve.
9. Refrigerant Metering Device: Dual-port, thermal-expansion valve to allow specified operation with entering-water temperatures from **25 to 125 deg F**.

E. Controls:

1. Basic Unit Control Modes and Devices:
 - a. Unit shutdown on high or low refrigerant pressures.
 - b. Unit shutdown on low water temperature.
 - c. Low- and high-voltage protection.
 - d. Overcurrent protection for compressor.
 - e. Random time delay, three to 10 seconds, start on power-up.
 - f. Time delay override for servicing.
 - g. Control voltage transformer.
 - h. Water-coil freeze protection (selectable for water or antifreeze).
 - i. Automatic intelligent reset. Unit shall automatically reset five minutes after trip if the fault has cleared. Should a fault reoccur three times sequentially, lockout requiring manual reset occurs.
 - j. Ability to defeat time delays for servicing.
 - k. Digital display to indicate high pressure, low pressure, low voltage, and high voltage.
 - l. The low-pressure switch shall not be monitored for the first 90 seconds after a compressor start command to prevent nuisance safety trips.
 - m. Remote fault-type indication at thermostat.
 - n. Selectable 24-V dc or pilot duty dry contact alarm output.
 - o. 24-V dc output to cycle a motorized water valve with compressor contactor.
 - p. Service test mode for troubleshooting and service.
 - q. Unit-performance sentinel warns when heat pump is running inefficiently.
 - r. Compressor soft start.
2. Thermostat:
 - a. Wall-Mounted Thermostat:
 - 1) Heat-cool-off switch.
 - 2) **Seven day**, programmable.
 - 3) **Automatic** changeover.
 - 4) **Exposed** temperature set point.
 - 5) **Exposed** temperature indication.
 - 6) Deg F indication.
 - b. Unoccupied period override push button.
 - c. Digital display to indicate fault condition at heat pump.
 - d. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
 - e. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at central workstation.
 - f. Provide **BAC-net** interface for central DDC workstation for the following functions:

- 1) Set-point adjustment.
- 2) Start/stop and operating status of heat-pump unit.
- 3) Data inquiry to include supply-air and room-air temperature and humidity, and entering-water temperature.
- 4) Occupied and unoccupied schedules.

F. Electrical Connection: Single electrical connection **with fused disconnect**.

G. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Source-Side Water Supply:

- a. Water Flow: **4 gpm**.
- b. Entering-Water Temperature (Cooling): **86 deg F**.
- c. Entering-Water Temperature (Heating): **68 deg F**.

2. Cooling:

- a. Total Capacity: **12,200 Btu/h**.
- b. Minimum Energy-Efficiency Ratio (EER): **14.9**

3. Heating:

- a. Capacity: **16,500 Btu/h**.
- b. Minimum Coefficient of Performance (COP): **5.1**

4. Electrical Characteristics for Single Connection:

- a. Volts: **208/230 V**.
- b. Phase: **Single**
- c. Hertz: 60.
- d. Rated Load Amperes (RLA): 4.6 A.
- e. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: 6.7 A.
- f. Maximum Overcurrent Protection (MOCP): 15 A.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Hose Kits: Tag hose kits to equipment designations.

1. Minimum Working Pressure: 400 psig.
2. Operating Temperatures: From 33 to 211 deg F.
3. Hose Length: **36 inches**.
4. Minimum Hose Diameter: Equal to water-source unitary heat-pump piping connection.
5. Hose Material: Braided stainless steel with adapters for pipe connections.
6. Isolation Valves: Two-piece, bronze-body ball valves with stainless-steel ball and stem, standard-port threaded connections, and galvanized-steel lever handle. Valves shall be factory installed on supply and return connections of both load-side and source-side heat exchangers. If balancing valve is combination shutoff type with memory stop, the isolation valve may be omitted on the return.

7. Strainer: Y-pattern with blowdown valve in supply connections of both load and source side of heat exchangers.
8. Balancing Valves: Mount in return connection. Include meter ports to allow flow measurement with differential pressure gage.
 - a. Automatic balancing valve, factory set to operate within 10 percent of design flow rate over a pressure range of 2 to 80 psig.
 - b. Manual, calibrated-orifice balancing valve with memory stop.
 - c. Manual, venturi-type balancing valve with memory stop.
9. Water-Regulating Valve Assemblies: A direct acting valve regulates discharge pressure during the cooling cycle, and a reverse acting valve regulates the suction pressure during the heating cycle. Valves shall close when heat-pump compressor is not running.
10. Motorized Water Valve: Stop water flow through the unit when compressor is off. Slow-acting, 24-V dc valve with threaded connections is installed between isolation valves and heat exchanger.

B. Hose Kit Assemblies:

1. Minimum Working Pressure: 400-psig.
2. Operating Temperatures: From 33 to 211 deg F.
3. Hose Length: **36 inches**.
4. Minimum Hose Diameter: Equal to water-source unitary heat-pump piping connection.
5. Hose Material: Braided stainless steel with adapters for pipe connections.
6. Supply and return hoses having ball valve with pressure-temperature port.
7. Supply hose having ball valve with pressure-temperature port; return hose having automatic flow regulator valve with pressure-temperature ports and ball valve.
8. Supply hose having Y-pattern strainer with blowdown valve and ball valve with pressure-temperature port; return hose having automatic flow regulator with pressure-temperature ports and ball valve.
9. Supply hose having Y-pattern strainer with blowdown valve and ball valve with pressure-temperature port; return hose having ball valve with pressure-temperature port.

C. Loop Controller: Six stages; two stages for heating and four stages for cooling.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electric installations for water-source unitary heat pumps to verify actual locations of piping connections and electrical conduits before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install water-source, unitary heat pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s).
- B. Install wall-mounting thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:
 - 1. Connect supply and return hydronic piping to heat pump with **unions and shutoff valves or hose kits**.
- B. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer but not specified to be factory mounted.
- C. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow space for service and maintenance.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections:
 - 1. After installing water to water heat pumps and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Heat pumps will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. **Perform** startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
 - 3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor and coils.
 - 4. Inspect internal insulation.
 - 5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.

6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
8. Adjust vibration isolators.
9. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
10. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
11. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
12. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
13. Verify thermostat calibration.
14. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to **two** visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. **Train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain water-source unitary heat pumps.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 19

LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Copper building wire.
2. Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
3. Armored cable, Type AC.
4. Photovoltaic cable, Type PV.
5. Mineral-insulated cable, Type MI.
6. Connectors and splices.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems communications cables and Classes 1, 2, and 3 control cables.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. PV: Photovoltaic.
- B. RoHS: Restriction of Hazardous Substances.
- C. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For **testing agency or manufacturer's authorized service representative**.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. RoHS compliant.
 - 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- C. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with **ASTM B8** or **ASTM B496** for stranded conductors.
- D. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type NM: Comply with UL 83 and UL 719.
 - 2. **Type RHH and Type RHW-2**: Comply with UL 44.
 - 3. **Type USE-2 and Type SE**: Comply with UL 854.
 - 4. Type TC-ER: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 1277.
 - 5. **Type THHN and Type THWN-2**: Comply with UL 83.
 - 6. **Type THW and Type THW-2**: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
 - 7. Type UF: Comply with UL 83 and UL 493.
 - 8. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
- E. Shield:
 - 1. Type TC-ER: Cable designed for use with VFCs, with oversized crosslinked polyethylene insulation, **spiral-wrapped foil plus 85 percent coverage braided shields and insulated full-size ground wire or dual spirally wrapped copper tape shields and three bare symmetrically applied ground wires**, and sunlight- and oil-resistant outer PVC jacket.

2.2 ALUMINUM BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn aluminum current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.

B. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

C. Conductors: Aluminum, complying with ASTM B800 and ASTM B801.

D. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type NM: Comply with UL 83 and UL 719.
2. **Type RHH and Type RHW-2:** Comply with UL 44.
3. **Type USE-2 and Type SE:** Comply with UL 854.
4. Type TC-ER: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 1277.
5. **Type THHN and Type THWN-2:** Comply with UL 83.
6. **Type THW and Type THW-2:** Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
7. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

2.3 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.

B. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. Comply with UL 1569.
3. RoHS compliant.
4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

C. Circuits:

1. **Single circuit and multicircuit with color-coded conductors.**
2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.

D. Conductors: **Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors or Aluminum, complying with ASTM B800 and ASTM B801.**

E. Ground Conductor: **Insulated**

F. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

G. Armor: **Steel or Aluminum**, interlocked.

H. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.

2.4 ARMORED CABLE, TYPE AC

A. Description: A factory assembly of insulated current-carrying conductors with or without an equipment grounding conductor in an overall metallic sheath.

B. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. Comply with UL 4.
4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

C. Circuits:

1. **Single circuit and multicircuit with color-coded conductors.**
2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.

D. Conductors: **Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors or Aluminum, complying with ASTM B800 and ASTM B801.**

E. Ground Conductor: **Insulated**

F. Conductor Insulation: Type THHN/THWN-2. Comply with UL 83.

G. Armor: **Steel or Aluminum**, interlocked.

2.5 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

B. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.

C. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.

1. Material: **Copper or Aluminum**
2. Type: **One or Two** hole with **standard** barrels.
3. Termination: **Compression or Crimp**.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders:
 - 1. Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
 - 2. Copper for feeders smaller than No. 4 AWG; copper or aluminum for feeders No. 4 AWG and larger. Conductors shall be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits:
 - 1. Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
 - 2. Copper. Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 10 AWG and larger.
- C. VFC Output Circuits Cable: Extra-flexible stranded for all sizes.
- D. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.
- E. PV Circuits: **Copper or Aluminum.** Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway or Type USE, single conductor in raceway or Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI or Multiconductor cable, Type SE.**
- B. Exposed Feeders: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway or Armored cable, Type AC or Metal-clad cable, Type MC or Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI or Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM.**
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspaces: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Armored cable, Type AC or Metal-clad cable, Type MC or Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI or Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM.**
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway or Underground feeder cable, Type UF.**
- E. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Armored cable, Type AC or Metal-clad cable, Type MC or Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI.**
- F. Feeders in Cable Tray: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors larger than No. 1/0 AWG or Armored cable, Type AC**

or Metal-clad cable, Type MC or Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI or Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM.

- G. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspaces: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Armored cable, Type AC or Metal-clad cable, Type MC or Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI or Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM.**
- H. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Armored cable, Type AC or Metal-clad cable, Type MC or Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI or Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM.**
- I. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway or Underground branch-circuit cable, Type UF.**
- J. Branch Circuits Installed below Raised Flooring: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Armored cable, Type AC or Metal-clad cable, Type MC or Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI.**
- K. Branch Circuits in Cable Tray: **Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors larger than No. 1/0 AWG or Armored cable, Type AC or Metal-clad cable, Type MC or Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI or Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM.**
- L. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- M. VFC Output Circuits: **Type XHHW-2 in metal conduit or Type TC-ER cable with braided shield or Type TC-ER cable with dual tape shield.**
- N. PV Circuits, Type USE-2: For PV source circuits rated at 600 V or less.
- O. PV Circuits, Type PV: For PV source circuits rated at **600 V**.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.

- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- G. Complete cable tray systems installation according to Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems" prior to installing conductors and cables.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material **and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.**
 - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least **6 inches** of slack.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Administrant for Tests and Inspections:

1. Owner will engage qualified testing agency to administer and perform tests and inspections.
2. Engage qualified testing agency to administer and perform tests and inspections.
3. Engage factory-authorized service representative to administer and perform tests and inspections on components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
4. Administer and perform tests and inspections **with assistance of factory-authorized service representative** if needed or requested by owner

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
2. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test **service entrance and feeder conductors and conductors** feeding the following critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements:
3. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
 - a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
 - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
 - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
 - 3) Thermographic survey.
 - c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
 - d. Inspect for correct identification.
 - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
 - f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
 - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
 - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
4. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.
 - a. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - b. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
5. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

- C. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:
 - 1. Procedures used.
 - 2. Results that comply with requirements.
 - 3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 23
CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Backboards.
2. Category 5e twisted pair cable.
3. Category 6 twisted pair cable.
4. Twisted pair cabling hardware.
5. Low-voltage control cabling.
6. Control-circuit conductors.
7. Identification products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.
- C. Plenum: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.
- D. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency, RCDD, layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inches or less.
 - 2. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
 - 3. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
- C. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.
- D. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.
- E. RoHS compliant.

2.2 CATEGORY 5e TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 5e cable at frequencies up to 100 MHz.
- B. Standard: Comply with ICEA S-90-661, NEMA WC 63.1, and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 5e cables.
- C. Conductors: 100-ohm, 24 AWG solid copper.
- D. Shielding/Screening: **Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP) or Shielded twisted pairs (FTP) or Screened twisted pairs (F/UTP) or Screened and shielded twisted pairs (F/FTP).**
- E. Cable Rating: **Plenum.**

- F. Jacket: **White or Gray or color as approved** thermoplastic.

2.3 CATEGORY 6 TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250MHz.
- B. Standard: Comply with NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.
- C. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
- D. Shielding/Screening: **Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP) or Shielded twisted pairs (FTP) or Screened twisted pairs (F/UTP) or Screened and shielded twisted pairs (F/FTP)**.
- E. Cable Rating: **Plenum**.
- F. Jacket: **White or Gray or Blue or Yellow or color as approved** thermoplastic.

2.4 CATEGORY 6a TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6a cable at frequencies up to 500MHz.
- B. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6a cables.
- C. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
- D. Shielding/Screening: **Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP) or Shielded twisted pairs (FTP) or Screened twisted pairs (F/UTP) or Screened and shielded twisted pairs (F/FTP)**.
- E. Cable Rating: **Plenum**.
- F. Jacket: **White or Gray or Blue or Yellow or color as approved** thermoplastic.

2.5 TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate twisted pair copper communications cable.
- B. General Requirements for Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:
 1. Comply with the performance requirements of **Category 5e or Category 6**
 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
 3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- C. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.

1. Number of Terminals per Field: **[One]** for each conductor in assigned cables.
- D. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
 1. Features:
 - a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
 - b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
 - c. Replaceable connectors.
 - d. 24 or 48 ports.
 2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch equipment racks.
 3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair **cable indicated**
- E. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in **36-inch** or **48-inch** lengths; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.
 1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
 2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.
- F. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
 1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
 2. Comply with IEC 60603-7-1, IEC 60603-7-2, IEC 60603-7-3, IEC 60603-7-4, and IEC 60603-7-5.
 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- G. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:
 1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
 2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.
 3. Standards:
 - a. Category 5e, unshielded twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-2.
 - b. Category 5e, shielded twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-3.
 - c. Category 6, unshielded twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-4.
 - d. Category 6, shielded twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-5.
 - e. Category 6a, unshielded twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-41.
 - f. Category 6a, shielded twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-51.
 4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- H. Faceplate:
 1. **Two or Four or Six** port, vertical single-gang faceplates designed to mount to single-gang wall boxes.

2. **Eight or Ten or Twelve** port, vertical double-gang faceplates designed to mount to double-gang wall boxes.
3. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
4. Metal Faceplate: **Stainless steel or Brass**, complying with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
5. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of twisted pair, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
 - a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.

I. Legend:

1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
2. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

2.6 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

A. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

1. **One or Multi-pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) or No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30)** tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.

B. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. **One or Multi-pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) or No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30)** tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.7 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, **Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway or Type THW, complying with UL 83 in raceway or Type XHHW-2, complying with UL 44 in raceway or Type TC, complying with UL 1277 in raceway or Type MC, complying with UL 1569**.
- B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, **Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway or Type XHHW-2, complying with UL 44 in raceway or power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes or power-limited tray cable, in cable tray**.
- C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, **Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway or Type XHHW-2, complying with UL 44 in raceway or**

power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes or power-limited tray cable, in cable tray or Type TW or Type TF, complying with UL 83, in raceway.

- D. Class 2 Control Circuits and Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits That Supply Critical Circuits: Circuit Integrity (CI) cable.

1. Smoke control signaling and control circuits.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: **Engage** a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test twisted pair cables according to TIA-568-C.2.
- C. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Test cables on receipt at Project site.
 1. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS AND BOXES

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or modified in this Section.
 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.
 2. Outlet boxes for cables shall be no smaller than 4 inches square by **1-1/2 inches** or **2-1/8 inches** deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within 1/8 inch of the finished wall surface.
 3. Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
- D. Raceway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of the room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of the room.

2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
 3. Secure conduits to backboard if entering the room from overhead.
 4. Extend conduits **3 inches** above finished floor.
 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
- E. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
 1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
 3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
 4. Cables may not be spliced.
 5. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 6. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
 7. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 8. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dreeeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
 9. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
 10. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles.
 11. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
- C. Twisted Pair Cable Installation:
 1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
 2. Install termination hardware as specified in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
- D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:
 1. Install wiring in raceways. Comply with requirements specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than [30 inches] apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

F. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:

1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
3. Below each feed point, neatly coil a minimum of [72 inches] of cable in a coil not less than [12 inches] in diameter.

G. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communications cable from potential EMI sources including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches.
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches.
3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or 5 HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches.

6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches.

3.4 REMOVAL OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Remove abandoned conductors and cables. Abandoned conductors and cables are those installed that are not terminated at equipment and are not identified with a tag for future use.

3.5 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:

1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits; **No 14 AWG**.
2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits; **No. 16 AWG**.
3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits; **No 12 AWG**.

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

3.7 GROUNDING

- A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify data and communications system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA-606-B; label printers shall use label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks complying with UL 969.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

- D. Perform tests and inspections **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative** if needed.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Visually inspect cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
 - 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
 - 3. Test cabling for direct-current loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination, but not after cross-connection.
 - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in its "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in its "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
- F. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.
- G. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 28 16

ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Receptacle switches.
4. Shunt trip switches.
5. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
6. Molded-case switches.
7. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
B. NO: Normally open.
C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 2. Current and voltage ratings.
 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
 4. Include evidence of a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) listing for series rating of installed devices.
 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.

- -
 -
 -
 -
 6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in **PDF** electronic format.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - b. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in **PDF** electronic format.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Fuses: Equal to **10** percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than **three** of each size and type.
 2. Fuse Pullers: **Two** for each size and type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
 - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: [One] year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed switches and circuit breakers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified **and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event.**"

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.3 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
 - 1. **Single or Double** throw.
 - 2. **Three or six** pole.
 - 3. **240-V ac.**
 - 4. **200 A and smaller**
 - 5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate **specified or indicated** fuses.
 - 6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- B. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 - 5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: **One or Two** NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - **24-V ac or 120-V ac or 208-V ac or 240-V ac**
 - 6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
 - 7. Lugs: **Mechanical or Compression** type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
 - 8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.4 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A.
- B. Type GD, General Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Six Pole, Single Throw, **240-V ac**, 200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.

4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: **One or Two** NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - **24-V ac or 120-V ac or 208-V ac or 240-V ac**
6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
7. Lugs: **Mechanical or Compression** type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.5 RECEPTACLE SWITCHES

- A. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Fusible Switch: **240 V ac, 30 or 60 or 100 A**; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate **specified or indicated** fuses; lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
- B. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Nonfusible Switch: **240-V ac, 30 or 60 or 100 A**; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Interlocking Linkage: Provided between the receptacle and switch mechanism to prevent inserting or removing plug while switch is in the on position, inserting any plug other than specified, and turning switch on if an incorrect plug is inserted or correct plug has not been fully inserted into the receptacle.
- D. Receptacle: Polarized, three-phase, four-wire receptacle (fourth wire connected to enclosure ground lug).
- E. Accessories:
 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: **One or Two** NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - **24-V ac or 120-V ac or 208-V ac or 240-V ac**
 6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
 7. Lugs: **Mechanical or Compression** type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
 8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.6 SHUNT TRIP SWITCHES

- A. General Requirements: Comply with **ASME A17.1**, UL 50, and UL 98, with Class J fuse block and 200-kA interrupting and short-circuit current rating.

- B. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Fusible Switch: **240-V ac, 30 or 60 or 100 A**; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; integral shunt trip mechanism; horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate [specified] [indicated] fuses; lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Nonfusible Switch: **240-V ac, 30 or 60 or 100 A**; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; integral shunt trip mechanism; horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Control Circuit: 120-V ac; obtained from **integral control power transformer, with primary and secondary fuses**, with a control power **transformer or source** of enough capacity to operate shunt trip, pilot, indicating and control devices.
- E. Accessories:
 - 1. Oiltight key switch for key-to-test function.
 - 2. Oiltight **green or white or yellow** ON pilot light.
 - 3. Isolated neutral lug; **100 or 200** percent rating.
 - 4. Mechanically interlocked auxiliary contacts that change state when switch is opened and closed.
 - 5. Form C alarm contacts that change state when switch is tripped.
 - 6. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-safety and alarm relay; **120-V ac** coil voltage.
 - 7. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-alarm voltage monitoring relay complying with NFPA 72.
 - 8. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 9. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 10. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 - 11. Auxiliary Contact Kit: **[One] [Two]** NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - **24-V ac or 120-V ac or 208-V ac or 240-V ac**
 - 12. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
 - 13. Lugs: **Mechanical or Compression** type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
 - 14. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.7 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Circuit breakers shall be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components shall be completely isolated from the handle and the accessory mounting area.
- B. Circuit breakers shall have a toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. The circuit-breaker handle shall be over center, be trip free, and reside in a tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon shall be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with a push-to-trip button, located on the face of the circuit breaker to mechanically operate the circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.

- C. The maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings shall be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. Circuit breakers shall **100 percent rated or series rated as indicated on the Drawings**. **Circuit breaker/circuit breaker** combinations for series connected interrupting ratings shall be listed by UL as recognized component combinations. Any series rated combination used shall be marked on the end-use equipment along with the statement "Caution - Series Rated System. _____ Amps Available. Identical Replacement Component Required."
- D. MCCBs shall be equipped with a device for locking in the isolated position.
- E. Lugs shall be suitable for **140 deg F rated wire on 125-A circuit breakers and below**.
- F. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- G. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- H. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- I. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
 - 1. Instantaneous trip.
 - 2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 - 4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I-squared t response.
- J. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- K. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
- L. Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
- M. Ground-Fault Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- N. Features and Accessories:
 - 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - 2. Lugs: **Mechanical or Compression** type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 - 3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.

4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; **integrally mounted, self-powered** type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
5. Communication Capability: **Circuit-breaker-mounted or Universal-mounted** communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system, specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
6. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
7. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
8. Auxiliary Contacts: **One SPDT switch or Two SPDT switches** with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
9. Alarm Switch: One **NO or NC** contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.
10. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
11. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with **electronic or ground-fault** trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
12. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
13. Accessory Control Power Voltage: **Integrally mounted, self-powered or Remote mounted and powered; 24-V ac or 120-V ac or 208-V ac or 240-V ac.**

2.8 MOLDED-CASE SWITCHES

- A. Description: MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.
- B. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- C. Features and Accessories:
 1. Standard frame sizes and number of poles.
 2. Lugs:
 - a. **Mechanical or Compression** type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 - b. Lugs shall be suitable for **140 deg F rated wire on 125-A circuit breakers and below or 167 deg F rated wire or 194 deg F rated wire, sized according to the 167 deg F temperature rating in NFPA 70.**
 3. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; remote-mounted and powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
 4. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
 5. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.

6. Auxiliary Contacts: **One SPDT switch or Two SPDT switches** with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic switch contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of switch contacts.
7. Alarm Switch: One **NO or NC** contact that operates only when switch has tripped.
8. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit switch operation; key shall be removable only when switch is in off position.
9. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with ground-fault shunt trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
10. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
11. Accessory Control Power Voltage: **Integrally mounted, self-powered or Remote mounted and powered; 24-V ac or 120-V ac or 208-V ac or 240-V ac.**

2.9 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be **finished with or gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1) or gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized galvannealed steel (NEMA 250 Types 3R, 12) or a brush finish on Type 304 stainless steel (NEMA 250 Type 4-4X stainless steel) or copper-free cast aluminum alloy (NEMA 250 Types 7, 9).**
- C. Conduit Entry: NEMA 250 Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures shall contain no knockouts. NEMA 250 Types 7 and 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.
- D. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be **externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the box, not the cover or directly operable through the front cover of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 1) or directly operable through the dead front trim of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 3R) or externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the cover (NEMA 250 Types 7, 9).** The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.
- E. Enclosures designated as NEMA 250 Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K shall have a dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of the enclosure cover when the circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning the circuit breaker ON when the enclosure cover is open.
- F. NEMA 250 Type 7/9 enclosures shall be furnished with a breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions as satisfactory.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify **Architect and Construction Manager and Owner** no fewer than **seven** days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 - 2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
 - 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without **Owner's** written permission.
 - 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

3.3 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.
 - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, **Type 1**.
 - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, **Type 3R or Type 4X**.
 - 3. **[Kitchen] [Wash-Down]** Areas: NEMA 250, **Type 4X stainless steel**.
 - 4. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, **Type 4**.
 - 5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
 - 6. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, **Type 7 or Type 9 with cover attached by Type 316 stainless steel bolts**.

3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- E. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.**
- E. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
 - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
 - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
 - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
 - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.

- 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
 - i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
 - j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.
2. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
 - d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
 - e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."

F. Tests and Inspections for Molded Case Circuit Breakers:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
 - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - e. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
 - f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.

- a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.
 - h. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with the coordination study.
2. Electrical Tests:
- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - b. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
 - c. Perform a contact/pole resistance test. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - d. Perform insulation resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation. Insulation resistance values shall be no less than two megohms.
 - e. Determine the following by primary current injection:
 - 1) Long-time pickup and delay. Pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 2) Short-time pickup and delay. Short-time pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 3) Ground-fault pickup and time delay. Ground-fault pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 4) Instantaneous pickup. Instantaneous pickup values shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.

- f. Test functionality of the trip unit by means of primary current injection. Pickup values and trip characteristics shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
 - g. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance with manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of the shunt trip and close coils shall be as indicated by manufacturer.
 - h. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators; zone interlocking; electrical close and trip operation; trip-free, anti-pump function; and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
 - i. Verify operation of charging mechanism. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 4. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 5. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- G. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Prepare test and inspection reports.
1. Test procedures used.
 2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
 3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 262816